## **Fax Unit**

# Field Service Manual Ver. 1.0

Latest Release: December, 2018 Initial Release: December, 2018

(c) 2018 Ricoh Co.,Ltd.

# Symbols, Abbreviations and Trademarks

Symbols, Abbreviations

This manual uses several symbols and abbreviations.

#### Symbols:

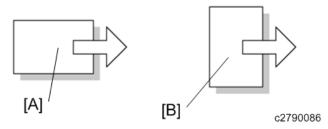
| Symbol      | What it means   |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|--|--|--|
| W           | Clip ring   |  |  |  |
| 0)PP        | Screw   |  |  |  |
| ØF.         | Connector   |  |  |  |
| <b>\$</b>   | Clamp   |  |  |  |
| <b>(Pa)</b> | E-ring  |  |  |  |
| <b>630</b>  | Flat Flexible Cable   |  |  |  |
|             | Timing Belt   |  |  |  |
| SEF         | Short Edge Feed   |  |  |  |
| LEF         | Long Edge Feed  |  |  |  |
| K           | Black   |  |  |  |
| С           | Cyan  |  |  |  |
| М           | Magenta   |  |  |  |
| Υ           | Yellow  |  |  |  |
| B/W, BW     | Black and White   |  |  |  |
| FC          | Full color  |  |  |  |
| 0           | Location of the screw(s) to be unscrewed or loosen                |  |  |  |
| <b>&gt;</b> | Location of the connector(s), clamp(s) or spring(s) to be removed |  |  |  |
| ₹ →         | Direction (Rotating or moving)                                    |  |  |  |

#### Abbreviations:



Abbreviations such as (M1), (S1), or (TH1) attached after the name of some electrical components show the symbols in Point-to-Point diagram.

| Abbreviation | Meaning         |  |
|--------------|-----------------|--|
| SEF          | Short Edge Feed |  |
| LEF          | Long Edge Feed  |  |



[A] Short Edge Feed (SEF)

[B] Long Edge Feed (LEF)

#### **Trademarks**

Adobe, Acrobat, PageMaker, PostScript, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ricoh Company, Ltd. is under license.

Firefox and Thunderbird are registered trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation.

Google, Android, and Chrome are trademarks of Google Inc.

iOS® is a registered trademark or trademark of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

JAWS® is a registered trademark of Freedom Scientific, Inc., St. Petersburg, Florida and/or other countries.

Kerberos is a trademark of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT).

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Macintosh, OS X, Bonjour, Safari, and TrueType are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Windows Vista, Internet Explorer, and Outlook are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corp. in the United States and/or other countries. PictBridge is a trademark.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and in other countries.

"Red Hat" is a registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc.

The SD and SD logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

UPnP is a trademark of UPnP Implementers Corporation.



This product includes RSA BSAFE® Cryptographic software of EMC Corporation. RSA and BSAFE are registered trademarks or trademarks of EMC Corporation in the United States and other countries.

The proper names of Internet Explorer 6, 7, and 8 are as follows:

- Microsoft® Internet Explorer® 6
- Windows® Internet Explorer® 7
- Windows® Internet Explorer® 8

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

• The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise

• The product names of Windows 7 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Professional

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Ultimate

Microsoft® Windows® 7 Enterprise

The product names of Windows 8 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 8

Microsoft® Windows® 8 Pro

Microsoft® Windows® 8 Enterprise

The product names of Windows 8.1 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 8.1

Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 Pro

Microsoft® Windows® 8.1 Enterprise

The product names of Windows 10 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Pro

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows® 10 Education

• The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition

The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition

• The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise

The product names of Windows Server 2008 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 R2 Enterprise

• The product names of Windows Server 2012 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 Foundation

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 Essentials

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 Standard

The product names of Windows Server 2012 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 Foundation

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 Essentials

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2012 R2 Standard

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

Microsoft product screen shots reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

## Table of Contents

| 1. | Installation                                    | 4    |
|----|---|------|
|    | Fax Option Type M37 (D3GF)                      | 4    |
|    | Accessory Check                                 | 4    |
|    | Installation Procedure                          | 4    |
|    | Adding Fax Application Icons to the Home Screen | 9    |
|    | Registering the Function key                    | . 10 |
|    | Function Priority Setting                       | . 12 |
|    | Notes for Connecting the Telephone Line         | . 13 |
|    | G3 Interface Unit Type M37                      | . 15 |
|    | Accessory Check                                 | . 15 |
|    | Installation Procedure                          | . 15 |
|    | Notes for Connecting the Telephone Line         | . 25 |
|    | Fax Unit Options                                | . 26 |
|    | Fax Memory Unit Type M19 64MB (D3BZ)            | . 26 |
|    | Handset HS3020 (D739)                           | . 28 |
|    | Fax Connection Unit Type M37                    | . 31 |
|    | Accessory Check                                 | . 31 |
|    | Installation Procedure                          | . 31 |
| 2. | Replacement and Adjustment                      | . 36 |
|    | FCU   | . 36 |
|    | SRAM Data Transfer Procedure                    | . 36 |
| 3. | Troubleshooting                                 | . 41 |
|    | Error Codes                                     | . 41 |
|    | Error Codes                                     | . 41 |
|    | Fax Connection Unit Error Codes                 | . 59 |
|    | Fax Connection Unit Error Code List             | . 59 |
|    | IFAX Troubleshooting                            | . 61 |
|    | IFAX Troubleshooting                            | . 61 |
|    | IP-Fax Troubleshooting                          | . 63 |
|    | IP-Fax Transmission                             | . 63 |
|    | IP-Fax Reception                                | . 65 |
| 4. | Service Tables                                  | . 68 |
|    | Cautions  | . 68 |
|    | Service Program Tables                          | . 69 |
|    | SP1-XXX (BIT Switches)                          | . 69 |
|    | SP2-XXX (RAM)                                   | . 70 |
|    | SP3-XXX (Machine Set)                           | . 70 |

| SP4-XXX (ROM Versions)            | 72  |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| SP5-XXX (RAM Clear)               | 72  |
| SP6-XXX (Reports)                 | 72  |
| SP7-XXX (Tests)                   | 74  |
| Bit Switches – 1                  | 76  |
| System Switches                   | 76  |
| Bit Switches – 2                  | 87  |
| I-Fax Switches                    | 87  |
| Printer Switches                  | 92  |
| Bit Switches – 3                  | 99  |
| Communication Switches            | 99  |
| Bit Switches – 4                  | 107 |
| G3 Switches                       | 107 |
| Bit Switches – 5                  | 115 |
| G3-2 and G3-3 Switches            | 115 |
| G4 Internal Switches              | 121 |
| G4 Parameter Switches             | 121 |
| Bit Switches – 6                  | 122 |
| IP Fax Switches                   | 122 |
| NCU Parameters                    | 129 |
| NCU Parameters                    | 129 |
| Dedicated Transmission Parameters | 140 |
| Programming Procedure             | 140 |
| Parameters                        | 140 |
| Service RAM Addresses             | 147 |
| Service RAM Addresses             | 147 |
| 5. Detailed Section Descriptions  | 158 |
| Overview                          | 158 |
| Overview                          | 158 |
| Boards                            | 159 |
| FCU                               | 159 |
| SG3 Board                         | 160 |
| Video Data Path                   | 162 |
| Transmission                      | 162 |
| Reception                         | 164 |
| Fax Communication Features        | 165 |
| Multi-port                        | 165 |
| Document Server                   | 165 |
| Internet Mail Communication       | 166 |

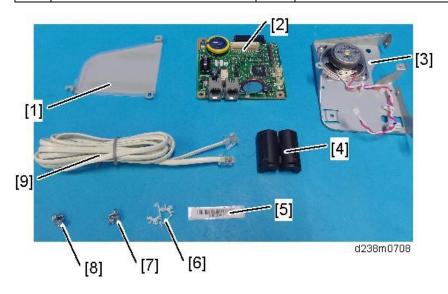
|    | IP-Fax   | . 174 |
|----|--|-------|
|    | What is IP-FAX?  | . 174 |
|    | T.38 Packet Format   | . 174 |
|    | Settings   | . 174 |
| 6. | Specifications   | . 175 |
|    | Fax Transmissions and Reception                                  | . 175 |
|    | Internet Fax Transmissions and Reception                         | . 176 |
|    | IP-FAX Specifications  |       |
|    | Validated Peripherals  | . 178 |
|    | E-mail Transmission and Folder Transmission (Fax (Classic) only) | . 179 |
|    | E-mail Reception   | . 180 |
|    | List of Maximum Values for Each Setting Item                     | . 181 |
|    | Fax Unit Configuration   | . 183 |
|    | G3 Interface Unit Type M37                                       | . 183 |

## 1. Installation

## Fax Option Type M37 (D3GF)

#### **Accessory Check**

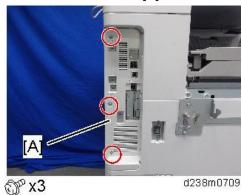
| No. | Description                  | Q'ty | Remarks  |
|-----|------------------------------|------|--|
| 1   | Shield                       | 1    |  |
| 2   | FCU                          | 1    |  |
| 3   | Speaker Bracket              | 1    |  |
| 4   | Ferrite Core                 | 1    | For NA, this ferrite core is attached to the telephone |
|     |                              |      | cable [4].   |
| 5   | Serial Number Decal          | 1    |  |
| 6   | Clamp                        | 2    |  |
| 7   | FCU Screw: M3x6              | 4    |  |
| 8   | Screw                        | 2    | Not used for this machine                              |
| 9   | Telephone Cable with ferrite | 1    | NA only  |
|     | core                         |      |  |
|     | FCC Decal                    | 1    | NA only  |
| -   | EMC Address Decal            | 1    | EU Only  |
| -   | Telephone Jack Cap           | 1    | TWN only   |



#### Installation Procedure

#### **ACAUTION**

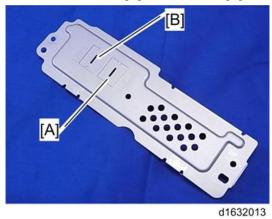
 Before installing this fax unit, print out all data in the printer buffer. Turn the main power to OFF and disconnect the power cord and the network cable. 1. Remove the I/F cover [A].



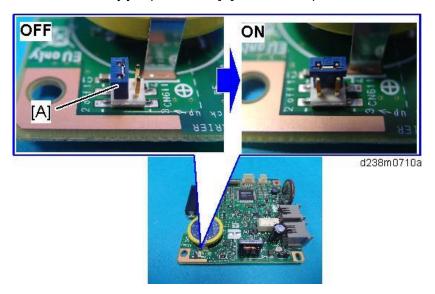
**2.** Remove the interface slot cover [A] ( $^{\circ}$  x 2).



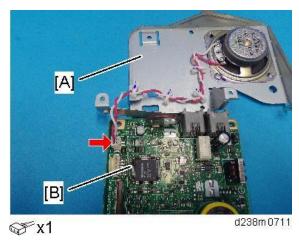
3. Remove the "TEL" [A] and "LINE1" [B] covers on the interface slot cover using a screwdriver.



**<u>4.</u>** Switch the battery jumper switch [A] to the "ON" position.



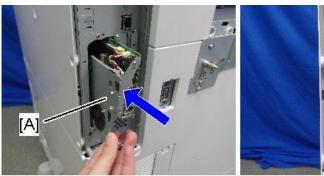
5. Connect the speaker bracket [A] to the FCU [B].



**<u>6.</u>** Attach the shield [A], FCU [B], and speaker bracket [C] together.



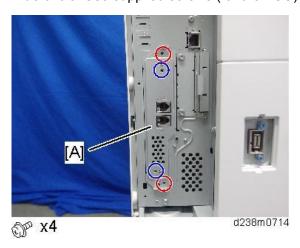
7. Insert the FCU [A] completely into the interface slot.





d238m0713

<u>8.</u> Reattach the interface slot cover [A].Blue circle: Use supplied screws (for the FCU)



- 9. To install the optional G3 unit, see "G3 Interface Unit Type M37".
- 10. Reinstall the I/F cover ( x 3).
- 11. Attach the handset support bracket and handset bracket to the machine.

To install the handset, connect the handset cord with the ferrite core to the "TEL" jack.



For details about installation, refer to Handset HS3020 (D739).

Taiwan only: Install the telephone jack cap in the "TEL" jack if the handset is not installed on the machine.

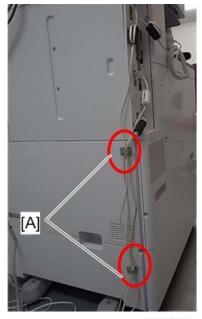
**12.** Make one loop with the telephone cord, and then attach the ferrite core [A] (this step is not needed for NA).



d238m 0916

#### 1.Installation

- 13. Connect the telephone cord to the "LINE 1" jack.
- **14.** Attach the clamps [A] to the rear cover of the optional paper feed unit, and then hold the telephone line with the clamps as shown below.



d163z0001

- **15.** Attach the FCC decal to the rear cover of the machine (NA only).
- 16. Insert the power plug into the outlet, and then turn ON the main power.

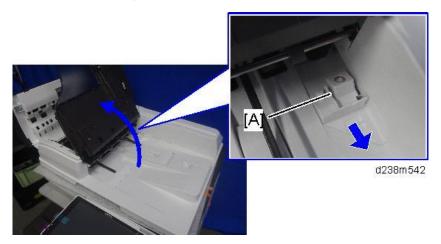


- Make sure that the outlet is grounded.
- "SRAM formatted" is displayed on the operation panel after the main power is turned ON.
   Turn the main power OFF and then ON again for normal use.
- **17.** Enter the correct country code with SP1-101-016 ((SYS OF): Country/area code for functional setting).
- 18. Execute SP3-102 in the fax SP mode and enter the serial number for the fax unit.

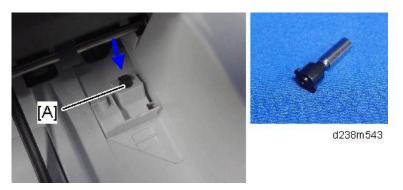
#### Fax Stamp Installation

This procedure is needed only for machines with ARDF DF3110.

1. Open the ARDF original cover and stamp holder [A].

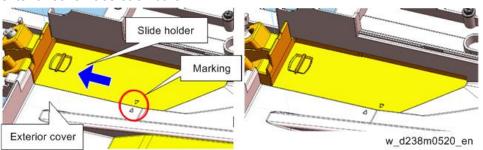


**2.** Install the fax stamp [A] provided with the machine.



#### 3. Close the holder.

Make sure that the holder is pushed into the position where the marks on the holder and the exterior cover face each other.



- 4. Close the ARDF.
- <u>5.</u> As an operation test, place the original on ARDF tray, and send it with the memory sending/fax stamp function ON.
  - Set the sending time to a time when nobody uses the machine (such as 11 PM).
  - Check if the fax stamp is marked on the trailing edge of the original.

#### Adding Fax Application Icons to the Home Screen

The fax application icon is normally added automatically. However, if it is missing from the Home screen, add it as follows:

The display (user interface, etc.) looks different from that of the actual machine.

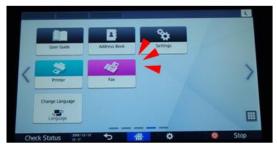
1. Press the [Application List] key [A].



d0bqm0606

- **2.** Press and hold the Fax application from the app list.
- **3.** Drag and position the application on the home screen.





d0bqm0605

#### Registering the Function key

By registering a fax application to a function key on the Home screen, you can open the application from any page. Specify the setting as required.

Function Keys 1, 2, and 3 are from the left, as shown:

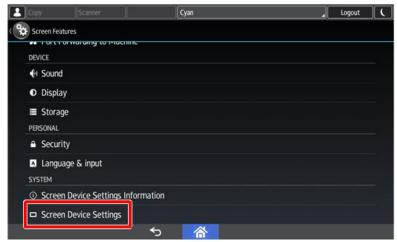
The display (user interface, etc.) looks different from that of the actual machine.



d0bqm0604

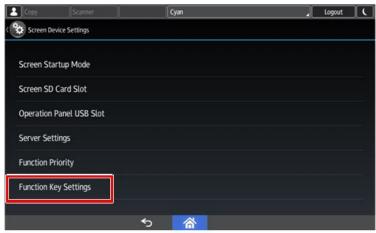
Allocate an application to a function key as follows:

- 1. Login as the machine administrator
- **2.** Press "Settings" icon > "Screen Features Settings".
- 3. Press [Screen Device Settings].



d238m0988e

4. Press [Function Key Settings].



d238m0994e

#### 1.Installation

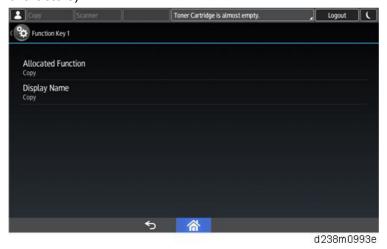
**<u>5.</u>** Select the key to register.

To disable a function key, deselect the corresponding function key check box.



**<u>6.</u>** Press [Allocated Function], and then select the fax application.

In [Display Name], you can change the name of the icon on the Home screen (using up to 64 characters).

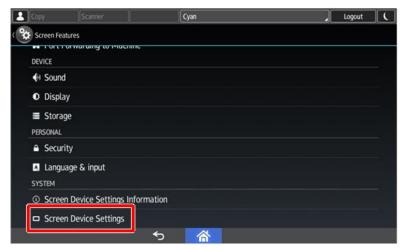


#### **Function Priority Setting**

You can specify whether the fax application appears on the operation panel just after turning the power on or just after the system is reset automatically.

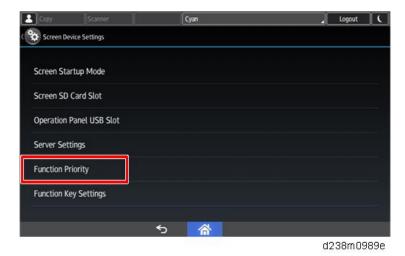
- **1.** Login as the machine administrator
- 2. Press "Settings" icon > "Screen Features Settings".

#### 3. Press [Screen Device Settings].

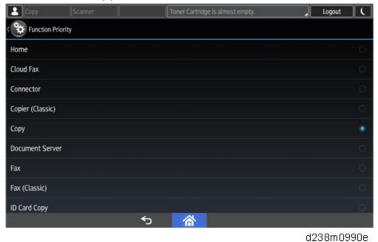


d238m0988e

#### 4. Press [Function Priority].



**5.** Select the fax application.



#### Notes for Connecting the Telephone Line

Checking the following before connecting the telephone line:

If a phone line dedicated to business phones is connected to the MFP, the fax board may be damaged.

#### 1.Installation

Make sure that the connecting phone line is for fax.

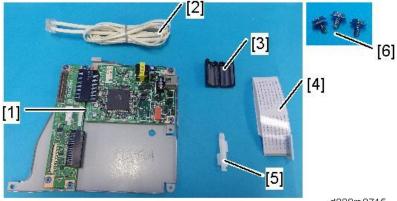
#### Why the Fax Board may be damaged?

Business phones have various functions. To operate those functions, a high current is supplied to a business phone line. This may damage components on the Fax board.

## **G3 Interface Unit Type M37**

#### **Accessory Check**

| No. | Description        | Q'ty | Remarks |
|-----|--------------------|------|---------|
| 1   | SG3 Interface Unit | 1    |         |
| 2   | Telephone Cable    | 1    | NA only |
| 3   | Ferrite Core       | 1    |         |
| 4   | FFC                | 1    |         |
| 5   | FFC Holder         | 1    |         |
| 6   | Screw: M3x6        | 3    |         |
| -   | EMC Address Decal  | 1    | EU only |
| -   | FCC Decal          | 1    | NA only |



d238m0715

#### Installation Procedure

#### **ACAUTION**

• Before installing this fax unit, print out all data in the printer buffer. Turn the main power to OFF and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.

An additional two SG3 boards can be added for this model. Follow the procedures for installing a single SG3 board or double SG3 board as required.

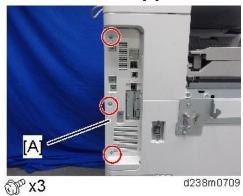
#### Single G3 Board

#### ( Preparation

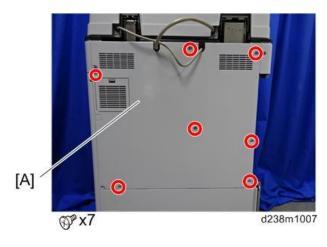
• If the Fax Option Type M37 is not installed in the machine, install the Fax Option Type M37 first (Fax Option Type M37 (D3GF)).

#### 1.Installation

#### 1. Remove the I/F cover [A].

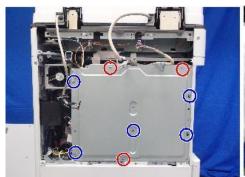


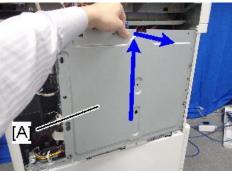
## 2. Remove the rear cover [A].



#### **3.** Remove the controller box cover [A].

Red circle: remove Blue circle: loosen





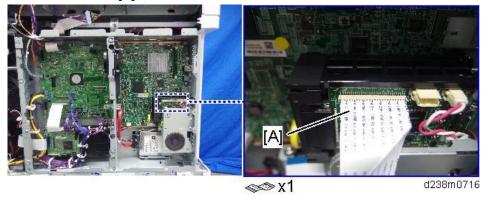
d238m0614

## **<u>4.</u>** Remove the "LINE2" [A] cover using a screwdriver.

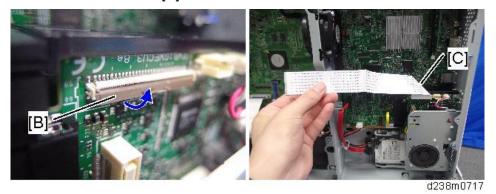


d238m072

## **<u>5.</u>** Connect the FFC [A] to the FCU.

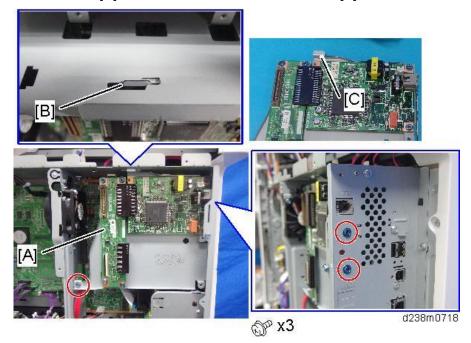


- Release the connector lock [B] and connect the FFC, and then lock the FFC.
- Connect the folded side [C] as shown below.

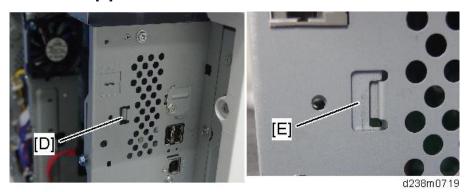


**6.** Install the SG3 interface unit [A].

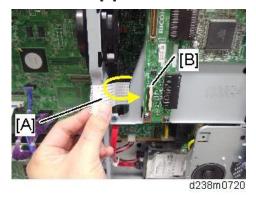
• Insert the tab [C] of the controller box into the cutout [B] of the SG3 interface unit.



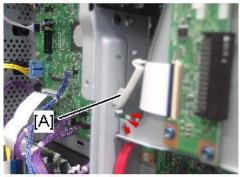
• Insert the tab [D] of the controller box into the cutout of the SG3 interface unit [E].

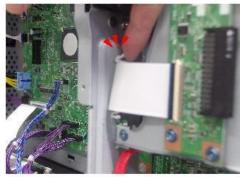


7. Take the FFC [A] out and connect the CCU interface board connector [B].



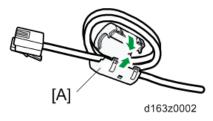
**8.** Secure the FFC [B] with the supplied clamp [A]. Make sure that there is no FFC deflection.



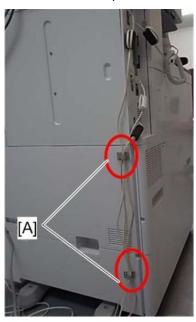




- **<u>9.</u>** Reinstall the controller box cover, rear cover and I/F cover.
- 10. Make two loops with the telephone cord, and then attach the ferrite core [A].



- 11. Connect the telephone cord to the "LINE 2" jack.
- **12.** Attach the clamps [A] to the rear cover of the optional paper feed unit, and then hold the telephone line with the clamps as shown below.



d163z0001

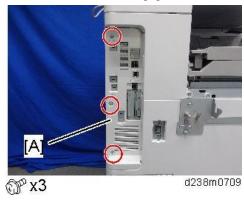
#### 1.Installation

- 13. Insert the power plug into the outlet. Turn ON the main power of the machine.
- 14. Enter the service mode. Set Bit 1 of Communication Switch 16 to "1" (SP1-104-023).
- **15.** Exit the service mode.
- **16.** Turn OFF then ON the main power.
- <u>17.</u> Print out the system parameter list. Check that "G3" is displayed as an option.
- 18. Set up and program the items required for PSTN-2 communications.

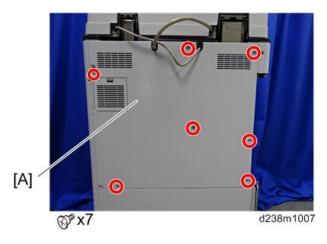
#### Double G3 Boards



- If the Fax Option Type M37 is not installed in the machine, install the Fax Option Type M37 first. (Fax Option Type M37 (D3GF))
- 1. Remove the I/F cover [A].

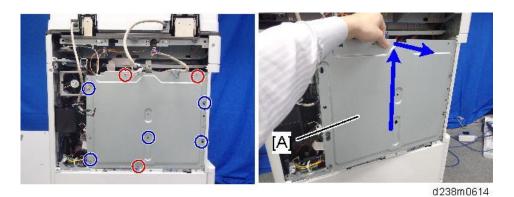


2. Remove the rear cover [A].

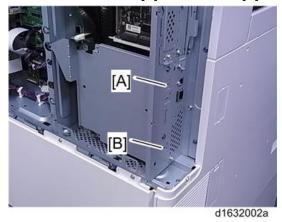


**3.** Remove the controller box cover [A].

Red circle: remove Blue circle: loosen



4. Remove the "LINE2" [A] and "LINE3" [B] covers using a screwdriver.

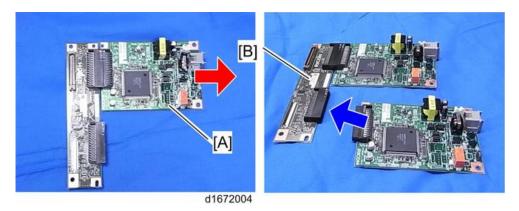


5. Remove the CCU I/F board and SG3 board [A] from the SG3 interface unit.
Repeat the same procedure for the second SG3 interface unit.



**<u>6.</u>** Remove the SG3 board [A] from one of the CCU I/F and SG3 board assemblies removed in step 5.

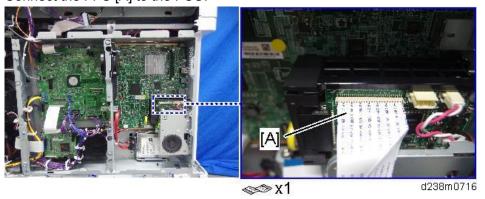
7. Attach the SG3 board removed in step 6 to the other CCU I/F and SG3 board assembly [B].



- 8. Attach the boards (CCU I/F board and two SG3 boards) to the SG3 interface unit bracket.
  - Use two screws from the six screws removed in step 5.

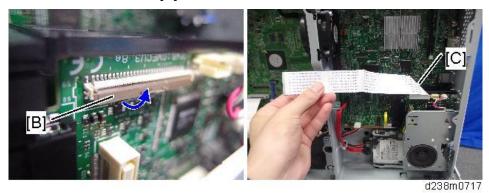


9. Connect the FFC [A] to the FCU.



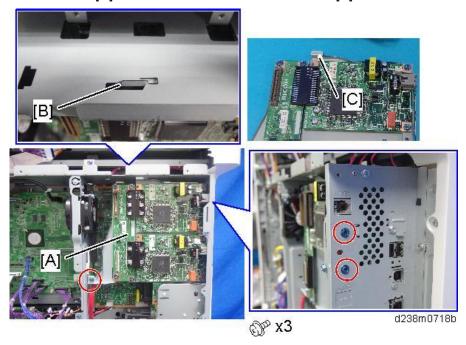
• Release the connector lock [B] and connect the FFC, and then lock the FFC.

• Connect the folded side [C] as shown below.

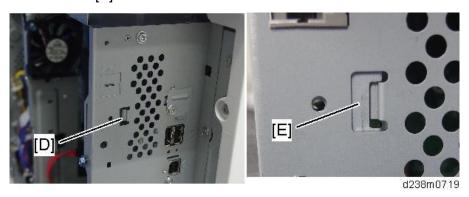


10. Install the SG3 interface unit [A].

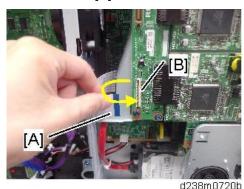
• Insert the tab [C] of the controller box into the cutout [B] of the SG3 interface unit.



• Insert the tab [D] of the controller box into the cutout of the SG3 interface unit [E].

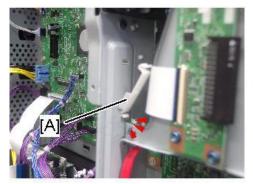


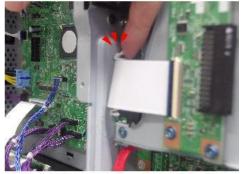
11. Take the FFC [A] out and connect the CCU interface board connector [B].

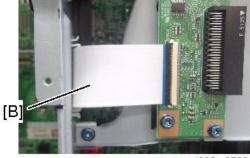


 $\underline{\textbf{12.}}$  Secure the FFC [B] with a supplied clamp [A].

Make sure that there is no FFC deflection.

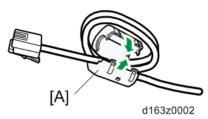






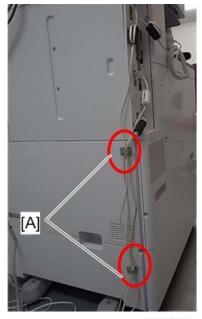
d238m0738

- 13. Reinstall the controller box cover, rear cover and I/F cover.
- **14.** Make two loops with the telephone cord for each telephone line (LINE2, LINE3). Attach the ferrite core [A] to each telephone line.



- 15. Connect the telephone cords to the "LINE2" and "LINE3" jacks.
- 16. Attach the clamps [A] to the rear cover of the optional paper feed unit, and then hold the telephone

lines with the clamps as shown below.



d163z0001

- 17. Insert the power plug into the outlet. Turn ON the main power of the machine.
- 18. Enter the service mode. Set Bit 1 of Communication Switch 16 to "1" (SP1-104-023).
- 19. Set Bit 3 of Communication Switch 16 to "1" (SP1-104-023).
- 20. Exit the service mode.
- 21. Turn ON then OFF the main power.
- 22. Print out the system parameter list. Check that "G3" is displayed as an option.
- 23. Set up and program the items required for PSTN-2 communications.

#### Notes for Connecting the Telephone Line

Checking the following before connecting the telephone line:

If a phone line dedicated to business phones is connected to the MFP, the fax board may be damaged. Make sure that the connecting phone line is for fax.

#### Why the Fax Board may be damaged?

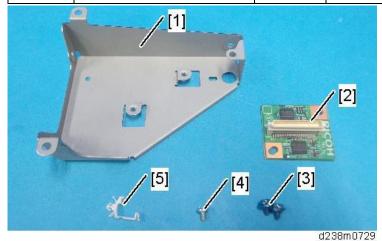
Business phones have various functions. To operate those functions, a high current is supplied to a business phone line. This may damage components on the Fax board.

## **Fax Unit Options**

## Fax Memory Unit Type M19 64MB (D3BZ)

#### Accessory Check

| No. | Description | Q'ty | Remarks                    |
|-----|-------------|------|----------------------------|
| 1   | Bracket     | 1    | Not used for this machine. |
| 2   | Memory unit | 1    |                            |
| 3   | Screws M3x6 | 2    | Not used for this machine. |
| 4   | Screws      | 1    | Not used for this machine. |
| 5   | Clamp       | 1    |                            |

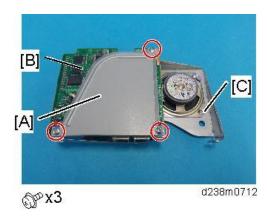


#### Installation Procedure

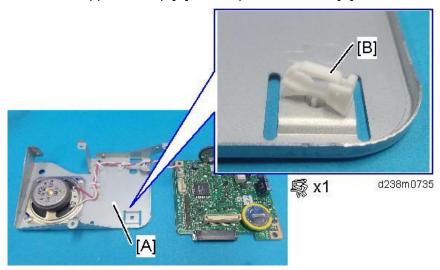
1. Remove the fax option unit [A] (Fax Option Type M37 (D3GF)).



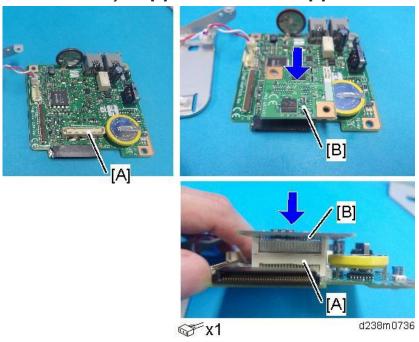
2. Separate the shield [A], FCU [B], and speaker bracket [C].



3. Attach the supplied clamp [B] to the speaker Bracket [A].



4. Attach the memory unit [B] to the FCU connector [A]

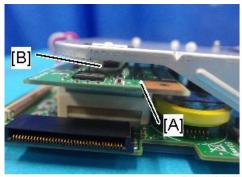


5. Re-assemble the shield [A], FCU [B], and speaker bracket [C].





• Make sure that the clamp [B] is pressing the memory unit [A] and holding it in place.



d238m0737

- **<u>6.</u>** Reinstall the FCU in the interface slot.
- 7. Re-assemble the machine.

#### Handset HS3020 (D739)

The optional handset is available for NA only.

1. Remove the scanner front cover [A] (\$\mathbb{O}^\* \times 2).



28

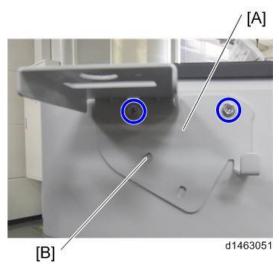
2. Remove the scanner left cover [A] ( x 3).



3. Make two holes in the scanner left cover.



- $\underline{\textbf{4.}}$  Reattach the scanner left cover ( $\mathfrak{G}^{\mu}$  x 3).
- **5.** Re-assemble the machine.
- **<u>6.</u>** Attach the bracket [A] enclosed with the fax unit ( x 2: M3 x 12) as shown. For machines with the single pass ADF, the bracket can be attached slanted using the hole [B].



#### 1.Installation

 $\underline{7.}$  Attach the cradle [A] to the handset bracket ( $\Im$  x 2).



**8.** Make two loops with the telephone cord, and then attach the ferrite core [A] to the cable.

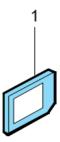


9. Connect the cable to the "TEL" jack on the left side of the controller box.

# **Fax Connection Unit Type M37**

## **Accessory Check**

| No. | Description                 | Q'ty | Remarks |
|-----|-----------------------------|------|---------|
| 1   | Fax Connection Unit SD card | 1    |         |



d595i900b

#### Installation Procedure

This unit allows a machine without the fax unit installed (client machine) to send and receive faxes via a machine with the fax unit installed (remote machine).

#### Requirements

- Up to six machines can be registered as the client machines.
- Machines that already have a fax unit installed cannot be used as client machines.
- Only one machine can be registered as the remote machine.
- Remote Fax transmission is possible using a G3 line.
- The Remote Fax function does not support User Code Authentication. Disable the User Code Authentication on the remote machine.
- Use this function to check the contents of a file that is stored in memory and not yet sent. Also, use this function to cancel a transmission from the client machine.

#### Order of installation

- 1. Install the Fax Connection Unit in the remote machine (fax unit already installed).
- 2. Install the Fax Connection Unit in the client machine (no fax unit is installed).
- **3.** Register the client machine on the remote machine.

#### [] Important

- Do not register the remote machine before the client machine is registered on the remote machine. Otherwise, the remote machine cannot be registered.
- **4.** Register the remote machine in the client machine.

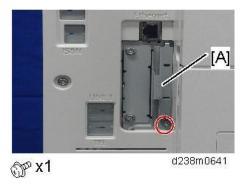
#### Installing the Fax Connection Unit



• Before starting this procedure, connect the network cable to the target machine(s), and then

#### 1.Installation

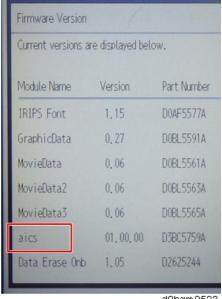
- configure the network settings.
- When installing more than one SD card, perform the merge operation. For details about how to merge, refer to "Card Appli Move" in the field service manual for the main frame.
- **1.** Remove the SD card slot covers [A].



2. Insert the Fax Connection Unit SD card into SD card slot 1 [A: Upper Slot].



- 3. Reattach the SD-card slot cover ( $^{\circ}$  x 1).
- 4. Turn ON the main power.
- <u>5.</u> Make sure that the machine can recognize the option in Firmware Version.Settings > Machine Features Settings > System Settings > Administrator Tools > Firmware VersionIf you see "asic" installation of fax connection unit is successful.



d0bqm0523

#### Registering the client machine(s)



- Before starting this procedure, connect the network cable to the target machine(s), and then configure the network settings.
- 1. On the remote machine, press the [Settings] key on the operation panel.
- **2.** Press [Machine Features Settings].
- 3. Press [System Settings].
- 4. Press [Administrator Tools].
- **<u>5.</u>** Press [Program/Change/Delete Remote machine].
- **6.** Enter the IP address or host name of the client machines.



- Up to six machines can be registered as the client machines.
- **7.** Press [OK] to set after "connection test".
- **8.** Press the [Settings] key on the operation panel to terminate System Settings.

#### Registering the remote machine



- Only one machine can be registered as the remote machine.
- Before starting this procedure, connect the network cable to the target machine(s), and then configure the network settings.
- 1. On the client machine, press the [Settings] key on the operation panel.
- 2. Press [Machine Features Settings].
- 3. Press [System Settings].
- 4. Press [Administrator Tools].
- **<u>5.</u>** Press [Program/Change/Delete Remote machine].

#### 1.Installation

- **<u>6.</u>** Enter the IP address or host name of the remote machine.
- 7. Press [OK] to set after "connection test".
- 8. Press [Exit].

#### Configuring the Remote Reception Settings

Perform the following procedure to enable the client machine(s) to receive faxes via the remote machine. You can forward or route received documents per line or to a specific sender.



- Before starting this procedure, connect the network cable to the target machine(s), and then configure the network settings.
- By performing procedures #1-3 above, the client machines can send faxes via the remote machine. The procedures shown below are necessary to enable the client machines to receive faxes.

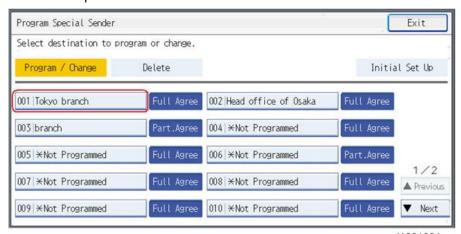
This procedure is performed on the remote machine.

#### **Using "Remote Reception Setting per Line"**

- 1. Press [Facsimile Settings].
- 2. Press [Remote Reception Setting per Line] in [Reception Settings].
- **3.** Enter an IP address or a host name of the client-side machine to connect.
- **4.** Press [Set], and [Exit] to exit from the setting.

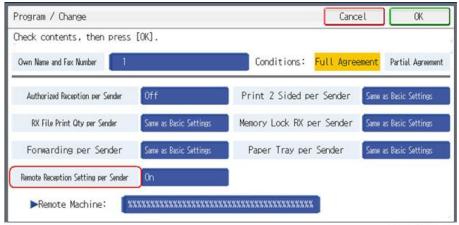
#### **Using "Remote Reception per Sender"**

- 1. Press [Facsimile Settings].
- 2. Press [Program Special Sender] in [Reception Settings].
- 3. Select the Special Sender.



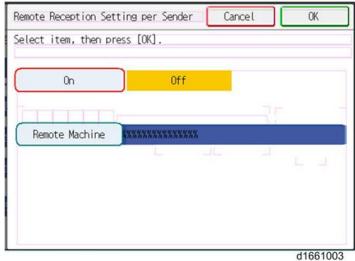
d1661001

4. Press [Remote Reception Setting per Sender].



d1661002

5. Press [On] and [Remote machine].



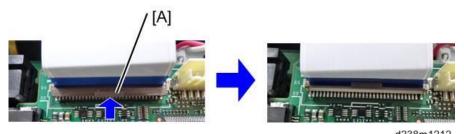
- 01001003
- **<u>6.</u>** Enter an IP address or a host name of the client machine to connect.
- 7. Press [OK] to exit from the setting.

# 2. Replacement and Adjustment

# **FCU**

#### **CAUTION**

• When removing the FFC, lift the lever [A] to release the lock.



#### **SRAM Data Transfer Procedure**

When you replace the FCU board, transfer the SRAM data from the old FCU board to the new FCU board. Do the following procedure to back up the SRAM data.



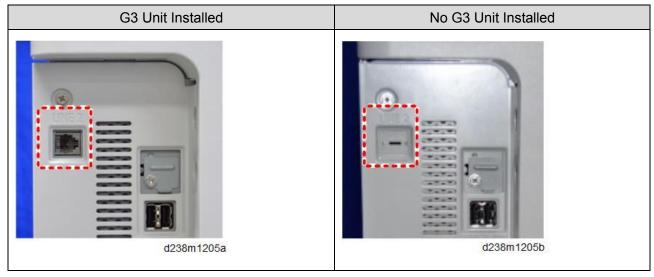
• The following data can be transferred: TTI, RTI, CSI, Fax bit switch settings, RAM address settings, NCU parameter settings.

#### Replacement Procedure

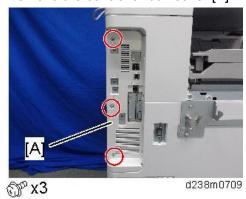


 Remove the G3 Unit and disconnect the FFC connection. (See the installation of "G3 Interface Unit Type M37")

Check "LINE2" to see if the 3G unit is installed.



1. Remove the controller box cover [A].



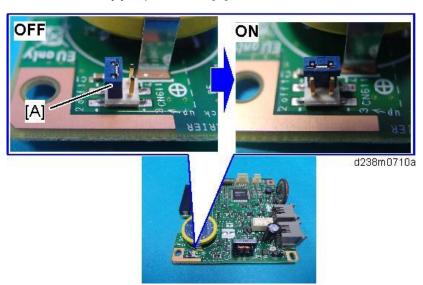
2. Remove the interface slot cover [A] ( \$\mathbb{O}^{\mathbb{C}} x 2).



<u>3.</u> Pull out the FCU [A] from the interface slot.

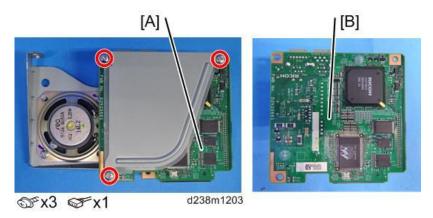


**<u>4.</u>** Switch the battery jumper switch [A] of the new fax unit to the "ON" position before installing.

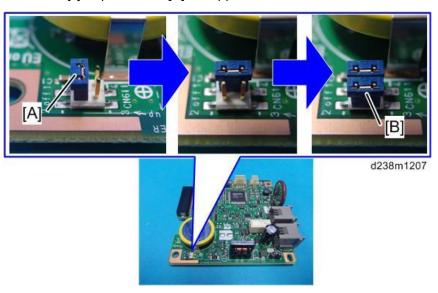




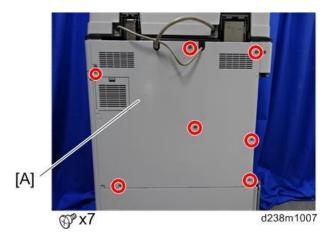
- If the battery jumper switch is not in the correct position, SC820 will occur.
- 5. Replace the installed FCU board [A] with a new FCU board [B].



6. Change the orientation of the battery jumper switch [A] on the removed FCU board, and then attach the battery jumper switch [B] on the FCU board to switch to the Restore mode.The battery jumper switch [B] is supplied with the new FCU board.

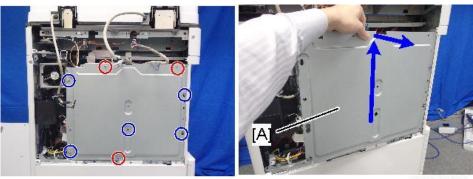


- $\overline{2}$ . Reinstall the new fax unit, and then the slot cover ( $\Im x$  2).
- 8. Remove the rear cover [A].



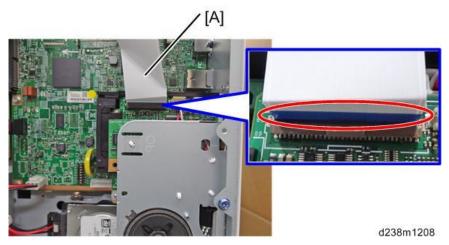
**9.** Remove the controller box cover [A].

Red circle: remove Blue circle: loosen



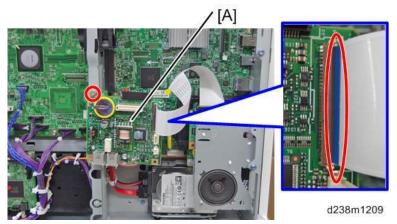
d238m0614

- 10. Attach the flat cable [A] to CN603 of the new fax unit.
  - When inserting the cable, make sure that it is not slanted.
  - Make sure that the blue tapes of the flat cable face outward.



**11.** Attach the removed FCU board [A] to the center frame of the controller box ( \$\mathbb{O}^{\mathbb{C}} x 1 ). Then attach the flat cable to CN603 of the removed FCU board.

Make sure that the blue tape of the flat cable faces outward.



#### CAUTION

 Keep the removed FCU board away from the metal frames. Otherwise, the removed FCU board may have a short circuit.

#### 2.Replacement and Adjustment

#### 12. Turn ON the main power.

SRAM data transmission starts. When the transmission is completed, you will hear a beeper sound.



- The beeper sound is at the same volume as the speaker sound.
- The beeper sounds even if the speaker sound is turned off.
- If the beeper does not sound, repeat main power OFF/ON until the beeper sounds, and then perform the transmission procedure. If the data cannot be transmitted, repeat transmission 2 or 3 times.
- **13.** When "Ready" is displayed on the display panel, turn OFF the main power. Disconnect the flat cable from the removed FCU board.
- 14. Remove the removed FCU board ( x 1).
- **15.** Remove the bracket from the center frame of the controller box ( $\Im x$  1).
- 16. Disconnect the flat cable from the new FCU board.
- **17.** Re-assemble the machine.
- 18. Turn ON the main power. Execute SP6-101 to print the system parameter list.
- 19. Check the system parameter list to make sure that the data is transferred correctly.
- **20.** Set the correct date and time with the "Settings" menu: Settings > Machine Features Settings > System Settings > Timer Setting > Set Date/Time.

# **Error Codes**

#### **Error Codes**

If an error code is displayed, retry communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below.



• Error codes appear in the error code display and on the service report.

| Code | Meaning                             | Suggested Cause/Action                             |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 0-00 | DIS/NSF not detected within 40 s of | Check the connection.                              |
|      | Start being pressed                 | The other party may be incompatible.               |
|      |                                     | Replace the FCU.                                   |
|      |                                     | Check for DIS/NSF with an oscilloscope.            |
|      |                                     | If the RX signal is weak, there may be a bad       |
|      |                                     | connection.  |
| 0-01 | DCN received unexpectedly           | The other party is out of paper or has a paper     |
|      |                                     | jam.   |
|      |                                     | The other party pressed the Stop button during     |
|      |                                     | communication.                                     |
| 0-03 | Incompatible modem at the other end | The other party is incompatible.                   |
| 0-04 | CFR or FTT not received after       | Check the connection.                              |
|      | modem training                      | Try changing the TX level and/or cable equalizer   |
|      |                                     | settings.  |
|      |                                     | Replace the FCU.                                   |
|      |                                     | The other machine may be defective. Try            |
|      |                                     | sending to another machine.                        |
|      |                                     | If the RX signal is weak or defective, there may   |
|      |                                     | be a bad connection.                               |
|      |                                     | Reference:   |
|      |                                     | TX level: NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN)                  |
|      |                                     | Cable equalizer: G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)               |
|      |                                     | Dedicated TX parameters in Service Program         |
|      |                                     | Mode   |
| 0-05 | Modem training fails even G3 shifts | Check the connection.                              |
|      | down to 2400 bps.                   | Try adjusting the TX level and/or cable equalizer. |
|      |                                     | Replace the FCU.                                   |

| Code | Meaning                             | Suggested Cause/Action  |
|------|-------------------------------------|---|
|      |                                     | Check for line problems.  |
|      |                                     | Reference:  |
|      |                                     | See error code 0-04.  |
| 0-06 | The other terminal did not reply to | Check the connection.   |
|      | DCS                                 | Try adjusting the TX level and/or cable equalizer   |
|      |                                     | settings.   |
|      |                                     | Replace the FCU.  |
|      |                                     | The other end may be defective or incompatible;   |
|      |                                     | try sending to another machine.   |
|      |                                     | Check for line problems.  |
|      |                                     | Reference:  |
|      |                                     | See error code 0-04.  |
| 0-07 | No post-message response from the   | Check the connection.   |
|      | other end after a page was sent     | Replace the FCU.  |
|      |                                     | The other party is out of paper or has a paper  |
|      |                                     | jam.  |
|      |                                     | The other party may have disconnected the call.   |
|      |                                     | Check for a bad line.   |
|      |                                     | The other machine may be defective. Try   |
|      |                                     | sending to another machine.   |
| 0-08 | The other end sent RTN or PIN after | Check the connection.   |
|      | receiving a page, because there     | Replace the FCU.  |
|      | were too many errors                | The other end may have jammed, or run out of  |
|      |                                     | paper or memory space.  |
|      |                                     | Try adjusting the TX level and/or cable equalizer   |
|      |                                     | settings.   |
|      |                                     | The other end may have a defective  The other end may have a defective and the other end may have a def |
|      |                                     | modem/FCU; try sending to another machine.  |
|      |                                     | Check for line problems and noise.  Peference:  |
|      |                                     | Reference:  |
|      |                                     | TX level: NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN)     Cable equalizer: G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)  |
|      |                                     | Cable equalizer: G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)     Dedicated TX parameters in Service Program   |
|      |                                     | Dedicated TX parameters in Service Program     Mode   |
| 0-14 | Non-standard post message           | Incompatible or defective remote terminal; try  |
|      | response code received              | sending to another machine.   |
|      |                                     | Noisy line; resend.   |
|      |                                     | <ul> <li>Try adjusting the TX level and/or cable equalizer</li> </ul>   |
|      |                                     | Try adjusting the TA level and/or cable equalizer   |

| Code | Meaning                              | Suggested Cause/Action                               |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|
|      |                                      | settings.  |
|      |                                      | Replace the FCU.                                     |
|      |                                      | Reference:   |
|      |                                      | See error code 0-08.                                 |
| 0-15 | The other terminal is not capable of | The other party is unable to accepting the following |
|      | specific functions.                  | functions, or the other party's memory is full.      |
|      |                                      | Confidential RX                                      |
|      |                                      | Transfer function                                    |
|      |                                      | SEP/SUB/PWD/SID                                      |
| 0-16 | CFR or FTT not detected after        | Check the connection.                                |
|      | modem training in confidential or    | Replace the FCU.                                     |
|      | transfer mode                        | Try adjusting the TX level and/or cable equalizer    |
|      |                                      | settings.  |
|      |                                      | The other machine may have disconnected, or it       |
|      |                                      | may be defective. Try sending to another             |
|      |                                      | machine.   |
|      |                                      | If the ax signal level is too low, there may be a    |
|      |                                      | line problem.  |
|      |                                      | Reference:   |
|      |                                      | See error code 0-08.                                 |
| 0-17 | Communication was interrupted by     | If the Stop key was not pressed and this error keeps |
|      | pressing the Stop key                | occurring, replace the operation panel or the        |
|      |                                      | operation panel drive board.                         |
| 0-20 | Facsimile data not received within 6 | Check the connection.                                |
|      | s of retraining                      | Replace the FCU.                                     |
|      |                                      | Check for line problems.                             |
|      |                                      | Try calling another fax machine.                     |
|      |                                      | Try adjusting the reconstruction time for the first  |
|      |                                      | line and/or RX cable equalizer setting.              |
|      |                                      | Reference:   |
|      |                                      | Reconstruction time - G3 Switch 0A, Bit 6            |
|      |                                      | Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)             |
| 0-21 | EOL signal (end-of-line) from the    | Check the connection between the FCU and             |
|      | other end not received within 5 s of | line.  |
|      | the previous EOL signal              | Check for line noise or other line problems.         |
|      |                                      | Replace the FCU.                                     |
|      |                                      | The remote machine may be defective or may           |
|      |                                      | have been disconnected.                              |

| Code | Meaning                             | Suggested Cause/Action                             |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|
|      |                                     | Reference:   |
|      |                                     | Maximum interval between EOLs and between ECM      |
|      |                                     | frames - G3 Bit Switch 0A, Bit 4                   |
| 0-22 | The signal from the other end was   | Check the connection.                              |
|      | interrupted for more than the       | Replace the FCU.                                   |
|      | acceptable modem carrier drop time  | The remote machine may be defective.               |
|      | (default: 200 ms)                   | Check for line noise or other line problems.       |
|      |                                     | Try adjusting the acceptable modem carrier drop    |
|      |                                     | time.  |
|      |                                     | Reference:   |
|      |                                     | Acceptable modem carrier drop time: G3 Switch 0A,  |
|      |                                     | Bits 0 and 1                                       |
| 0-23 | Too many errors during reception    | Check the connection.                              |
|      |                                     | Replace the FCU.                                   |
|      |                                     | The remote machine may be defective.               |
|      |                                     | Check for line noise or other line problems.       |
|      |                                     | Try asking the other party to adjust their TX      |
|      |                                     | level.   |
|      |                                     | Try adjusting the RX cable equalizer setting       |
|      |                                     | and/or RX error criteria.                          |
|      |                                     | Reference:   |
|      |                                     | Rx cable equalizer: G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)            |
|      |                                     | Rx error criteria: Communication Switch 02, Bits 0 |
|      |                                     | and 1  |
| 0-29 | Data block format failure in ECM    | Check for line noise or other line problems.       |
|      | reception                           | Check the FCU - NCU connectors.                    |
|      |                                     | Replace the NCU or FCU.                            |
| 0-30 | The other terminal did not reply to | Check the connection.                              |
|      | NSS(A) in AI short protocol mode    | Try adjusting the TX level and/or cable equalizer  |
|      |                                     | settings.  |
|      |                                     | The other terminal may not be compatible.          |
|      |                                     | Reference:   |
|      |                                     | Dedicated TX parameters - Section 4                |
| 0-32 | The other terminal sent a DCS,      | Check the protocol dump list.                      |
|      | which contained functions that the  | Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.   |
|      | receiving machine cannot handle.    |  |
| 0-33 | The data reception (not ECM) is not | Check the connection.                              |
|      | completed within 10 minutes.        | The other terminal may have a defective            |

| Code | Meaning  | Suggested Cause/Action  |
|------|--|---|
|      |  | modem/FCU.  |
| 0-52 | Polarity changed during  | Check the connection.   |
|      | communication  | Retry communication.  |
| 0-55 | FCU does not detect the SG3.   | FCU firmware or board defective.  |
|      |  | SG3 firmware or board defective.  |
| 0-56 | The stored message data exceeds the capacity of the mailbox in the SG3.  | SG3 firmware or board defective.  |
| 0-70 | The communication mode specified in CM/JM was not available (V.8 calling and called terminal)                      | <ul> <li>The other terminal did not have a compatible communication mode (e.g., the other terminal was a V.34 data modem and not a fax modem.)</li> <li>A polling TX file was not ready at the other terminal when polling RX was initiated from the calling terminal.</li> </ul> |
| 0-74 | The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect ANSam after sending CI.                   | <ul> <li>The calling terminal could not detect ANSam due to noise, etc.</li> <li>ANSam was too short to detect.</li> <li>Check the connection. and condition.</li> <li>Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.</li> </ul>  |
| 0-75 | The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CM in response to ANSam (ANSam timeout). | <ul> <li>The terminal could not detect ANSam.</li> <li>Check the connection. and condition.</li> <li>Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.</li> </ul>   |
| 0-76 | The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a JM in response to CM (CM timeout).      | <ul> <li>The called terminal could not detect a CM due to noise, etc.</li> <li>Check the connection. and condition.</li> <li>Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.</li> </ul>  |
| 0-77 | The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CJ in response to JM (JM timeout).       | <ul> <li>The calling terminal could not detect a JM due to noise, etc.</li> <li>A network that has narrow bandwidth cannot pass JM to the other end.</li> <li>Check the connection. and condition.</li> <li>Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.</li> </ul>            |
| 0-79 | The called terminal detected CI while waiting for a V.21 signal.   | <ul> <li>Check for line noise or other line problems.</li> <li>If this error occurs, the called terminal falls back to T.30 mode.</li> </ul>  |
| 0-80 | The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 2 – line  | The guard timer expired while starting these phases. Serious noise, narrow bandwidth, or low  |

| Code | Meaning                               | Suggested Cause/Action                               |
|------|---------------------------------------|--|
|      | probing.                              | signal level can cause these errors.                 |
| 0-81 | The line was disconnected due to a    | If these errors happen at the transmitting terminal: |
|      | timeout in V.34 phase 3 – equalizer   | Try making a call later.                             |
|      | training.                             | Try using V.17 or a slower modem using               |
| 0-82 | The line was disconnected due to a    | dedicated TX parameters.                             |
|      | timeout in the V.34 phase 4 – control | Try increasing the TX level.                         |
|      | channel start-up.                     | Try adjusting the TX cable equalizer setting.        |
| 0-83 | The line was disconnected due to a    | If these errors happen at the receiving terminal:    |
|      | timeout in the V.34 control channel   | Try adjusting the RX cable equalizer setting.        |
|      | restart sequence.                     | Try increasing the TX level.                         |
|      |                                       | Try using V.17 or a slower modem if the same         |
|      |                                       | error is frequent when receiving from multiple       |
|      |                                       | senders.   |
| 0-84 | The line was disconnected due to      | The signal did not stop within 10 s.                 |
|      | abnormal signaling in V.34 phase 4 -  | Turn off the main power switch, and then turn it     |
|      | control channel start-up.             | back on.   |
|      |                                       | If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.      |
| 0-85 | The line was disconnected due to      | The signal did not stop within 10 s.                 |
|      | abnormal signaling in V.34 control    | Turn off the main power switch, and then turn it     |
|      | channel restart.                      | back on.   |
|      |                                       | If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.      |
| 0-86 | The line was disconnected because     | The other terminal was incompatible.                 |
|      | the other terminal requested a data   | Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.     |
|      | rate using MPh that was not           |  |
|      | available in the currently selected   |  |
|      | symbol rate.                          |  |
| 0-87 | The control channel started after an  | The receiving terminal restarted the control         |
|      | unsuccessful primary channel.         | channel because data reception in the primary        |
|      |                                       | channel was not successful.                          |
|      |                                       | This does not result in an error communication.      |
| 0-88 | The line was disconnected because     | Try using a lower data rate at the start.            |
|      | PPR was transmitted/received 9        | Try adjusting the cable equalizer setting.           |
|      | (default) times within the same ECM   |  |
|      | frame.                                |  |
| 2-11 | Only one V.21 connection flag was     | Replace the FCU.                                     |
|      | received                              |  |
| 2-12 | Modem clock irregularity              | Replace the FCU.                                     |
| 2-13 | Modem initialization error            | Turn off the machine, and then turn it back on.      |

| Code | Meaning                               | Suggested Cause/Action                              |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|
|      |                                       | Update the modem ROM.                               |
|      |                                       | Replace the FCU.                                    |
| 2-22 | Counter overflow error of JBIG chip   | If error occurs frequently, change the settings for |
|      |                                       | resolution, paper size, and compression type.       |
| 2-23 | JBIG compression or reconstruction    | Turn off the machine, and then turn it back on.     |
|      | error                                 |   |
| 2-24 | JBIG ASIC error                       | Turn off the machine, and then turn it back on.     |
| 2-25 | JBIG data reconstruction error (BIH   | JBIG data error                                     |
|      | error)                                | Check the sender's JBIG function.                   |
| 2-26 | JBIG data reconstruction error (Float | Update the FCU ROM.                                 |
|      | marker error)                         |   |
| 2-27 | JBIG data reconstruction error (End   |   |
|      | marker error)                         |   |
| 2-28 | JBIG data reconstruction error        |   |
|      | (Timeout)                             |   |
| 2-29 | JBIG trailing edge maker error        | FCU defective                                       |
|      |                                       | Check the destination device.                       |
| 2-50 | The machine resets itself for a fatal | If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace     |
|      | FCU system error                      | the FCU.  |
| 2-51 | The machine resets itself because of  | If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace     |
|      | a fatal communication error           | the FCU.  |
| 2-53 | Snd msg() in the manual task is an    | The user did the same operation many times,         |
|      | error because the mailbox for the     | and this gave too much load to the machine.         |
|      | operation task is full.               |   |
| 4-01 | Line current was cut                  | Check the line connector.                           |
|      |                                       | Check for line problems.                            |
|      |                                       | Replace the FCU.                                    |
| 4-10 | Communication failed because of an    | Get the ID Codes the same and/or the CSIs           |
|      | ID Code mismatch (Closed Network)     | programmed correctly, and then resend.              |
|      | or Tel. No./CSI mismatch (Protection  | The machine at the other end may be defective.      |
|      | against Wrong Connections)            |   |
| 5-00 | Data reconstruction not possible      | Replace the FCU.                                    |
| 5-10 | DCR timer expired                     | Replace the FCU.                                    |
| 5-20 | Storage impossible because of a lack  | Temporary memory shortage.                          |
|      | of memory                             | Test the SAF memory.                                |
| 5-21 | Memory overflow                       |   |
| 5-23 | Print data error when printing a      | Test the SAF memory.                                |

| Code         | Meaning   | Suggested Cause/Action   |
|--------------|---|--|
|              | substitute RX or confidential RX  | Ask the other end to resend the message.   |
|              | message   |  |
| 5-25         | SAF file access error   | Replace an SD card or HDD.   |
|              |   | Replace the FCU.   |
| 6-00         | G3 ECM - T1 time out during   | Try adjusting the RX cable equalizer.  |
|              | reception of facsimile data   | Replace the FCU.   |
| 6-01         | G3 ECM - no V.21 signal was   |  |
|              | received  |  |
| 6-02         | G3 ECM - EOR was received   |  |
| 6-04         | G3 ECM - RTC not detected   | Check the connection.  |
|              |   | Check for a bad line or defective remote   |
|              |   | terminal.  |
|              |   | Replace the FCU.   |
| 6-05         | G3 ECM - facsimile data frame not   | Check the connection.  |
|              | received within 18 s of CFR, but  | Check for a bad line or defective remote   |
|              | there was no line fail  | terminal.  |
|              |   | Replace the FCU.   |
|              |   | Try adjusting the RX cable equalizer   |
|              |   |  |
|              |   | Reference:   |
|              |   | RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)   |
| 6-06         | G3 ECM - coding/decoding error  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> </ul>   |
|              | g g   | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> </ul>   |
| 6-06<br>6-08 | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during</li> </ul>  |
|              | g g   | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> </ul>   |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> </ul>   |
|              | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> </ul>  |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating</li> </ul>   |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> </ul>   |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received   | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> </ul>   |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received  G3 ECM - error frames still received   | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> <li>Check for line noise.</li> </ul>  |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received  G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> <li>Check for line noise.</li> <li>Adjust the TX level (use NCU parameter 01 or</li> </ul>  |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received  G3 ECM - error frames still received   | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> <li>Check for line noise.</li> <li>Adjust the TX level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated TX parameter for that address).</li> </ul>  |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received  G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all  | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> <li>Check for line noise.</li> <li>Adjust the TX level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated TX parameter for that address).</li> <li>Check the connection.</li> </ul>   |
| 6-08<br>6-09 | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received  G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps                                       | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> <li>Check for line noise.</li> <li>Adjust the TX level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated TX parameter for that address).</li> <li>Check the connection.</li> <li>Defective remote terminal.</li> </ul>   |
| 6-08         | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received  G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps  V.21 flag detected during high speed | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> <li>Check for line noise.</li> <li>Adjust the TX level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated TX parameter for that address).</li> <li>Check the connection.</li> <li>Defective remote terminal.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective or</li> </ul> |
| 6-08<br>6-09 | G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL  G3 ECM - ERR received  G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps                                       | <ul> <li>RX cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)</li> <li>Defective FCU.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>The other end pressed Stop during communication.</li> <li>The other terminal may be defective.</li> <li>Check for a noisy line.</li> <li>Adjust the TX levels of the communicating machines.</li> <li>See code 6-05.</li> <li>Check for line noise.</li> <li>Adjust the TX level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated TX parameter for that address).</li> <li>Check the connection.</li> <li>Defective remote terminal.</li> </ul>   |

| Code | Meaning                               | Suggested Cause/Action                             |
|------|---------------------------------------|--|
|      | because of an abnormal handshake      | If the same error occurs frequently, replace the   |
|      | in the V.34 control channel           | FCU.   |
|      |                                       | Defective remote terminal.                         |
| 6-99 | V.21 signal not stopped within 6 s    | Replace the FCU.                                   |
| 13-  | SIP user name registration error      | Double registration of the SIP user name.          |
| 17   |                                       | Capacity for user-name registration in the SIP     |
|      |                                       | server is not sufficient.                          |
| 13-  | SIP server access error               | Incorrect initial setting for the SIP server.      |
| 18   |                                       | Defective SIP server.                              |
| 13-  | SIP authentication error              | Registered password in the device does not         |
| 24   |                                       | match the password in the SIP server.              |
| 13-  | Network I/F setting error             | IPV4 is not active in the active protocol setting. |
| 25   |                                       | IP address of the device is not registered.        |
| 13-  | Network I/F setting error at power on | Active protocol setting does not match the I/F     |
| 26   |                                       | setting for SIP server.                            |
|      |                                       | IP address of the device is not registered.        |
| 13-  | IP address setting error              | IP address of the device is not registered.        |
| 27   |                                       |  |
| 14-  | SMTP Send Error                       | Error occurred during sending to the SMTP          |
| 00   |                                       | server. Occurs for any error other than 14-01 to   |
|      |                                       | 16. For example, the mail address of the system    |
|      |                                       | administrator is not registered.                   |
| 14-  | SMTP Connection Failed                | Failed to connect to the SMTP server (timeout)     |
| 01   |                                       | because the server could not be found.             |
|      |                                       | The PC is not ready to transfer files.             |
|      |                                       | SMTP server not functioning correctly.             |
|      |                                       | The DNS IP address is not registered.              |
|      |                                       | Network not operating correctly.                   |
|      |                                       | Destination folder selection not correct.          |
| 14-  | No Service by SMTP Service (421)      | SMTP server operating incorrectly or the           |
| 02   |                                       | destination for direct SMTP sending is not         |
|      |                                       | correct.   |
|      |                                       | Contact the system administrator and check that    |
|      |                                       | the SMTP server has the correct settings and       |
|      |                                       | operates correctly.                                |
|      |                                       | Contact the system administrator for direct        |
|      |                                       | SMTP sending and check the sending                 |
|      |                                       | destination.                                       |

| Code | Meaning                       | Suggested Cause/Action   |
|------|-------------------------------|--|
| 14-  | Access to SMTP Server Denied  | Failed to access the SMTP server because the   |
| 03   | (450)                         | access is denied.  |
|      |                               | SMTP server operating incorrectly. Contact the   |
|      |                               | system administrator to determine if there is a  |
|      |                               | problem with the SMTP server and to check that   |
|      |                               | the SMTP server settings are correct.  |
|      |                               | Folder send destination is incorrect. Contact the  |
|      |                               | system administrator to determine that the SMTF  |
|      |                               | server settings and path to the server are   |
|      |                               | correct.   |
|      |                               | Device settings incorrect. Confirm that the user   |
|      |                               | name and password settings are correct.  |
|      |                               | Direct SMTP destination incorrect. Contact the   |
|      |                               | system administrator to determine if there is a  |
|      |                               | problem at the destination and that the settings   |
|      |                               | at the destination are correct.  |
| 14-  | Access to SMTP Server Denied  | SMTP server operating incorrectly  |
| 04   | (550)                         | Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly  |
| 14-  | SMTP Server HDD Full (452)    | Failed to access the SMTP server because the   |
| 05   |                               | HDD on the server is full.   |
|      |                               | Insufficient free space on the HDD of the SMTP   |
|      |                               | server. Contact the system administrator and   |
|      |                               | check the amount of space remaining on the   |
|      |                               | SMTP server HDD.   |
|      |                               | Insufficient free space on the HDD where the  destination folder is leasted. Contact the system. |
|      |                               | destination folder is located. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space    |
|      |                               | remaining on the HDD where the target folder is  |
|      |                               | located.   |
|      |                               | <ul> <li>Insufficient free space on the HDD at the target</li> </ul>                             |
|      |                               | destination for SMTP direct sending. Contact the   |
|      |                               | system administrator. Check the amount of  |
|      |                               | space remaining on the target HDD or check if  |
|      |                               | the mail size setting is the default value (2MB).  |
|      |                               | Check the size of the original data. For example,  |
|      |                               | if the original has too many pages, the data size  |
|      |                               | can be too big to send.  |
| 14-  | User Not Found on SMTP Server | The designated user does not exist.  |

| Code | Meaning                             | Suggested Cause/Action                            |
|------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 06   | (551)                               | The designated user does not exist on the SMTP    |
|      |                                     | server.   |
|      |                                     | The designated address is not for use with direct |
|      |                                     | SMTP sending.                                     |
| 14-  | Data Send to SMTP Server Failed     | Failed to access the SMTP server because the      |
| 07   | (4XX)                               | transmission failed.                              |
|      |                                     | PC not operating correctly.                       |
|      |                                     | SMTP server operating incorrectly                 |
|      |                                     | Network not operating correctly.                  |
|      |                                     | Destination folder setting incorrect.             |
|      |                                     | Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly.      |
| 14-  | Data Send to SMTP Server Failed     | Failed to access the SMTP server because the      |
| 08   | (5XX)                               | transmission failed.                              |
|      |                                     | SMTP server operating incorrectly                 |
|      |                                     | Destination folder setting incorrect.             |
|      |                                     | Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly.      |
|      |                                     | Software application error.                       |
| 14-  | Authorization Failed for Sending to | POP-Before-SMTP or SMTP authorization failed.     |
| 09   | SMTP Server                         | Incorrect setting for file transfer               |
| 14-  | Addresses Exceeded                  | Number of broadcast addresses exceeded the        |
| 10   |                                     | limit for the SMTP server.                        |
| 14-  | Buffer Full                         | The send buffer is full so the transmission could |
| 11   |                                     | not be completed. Buffer is full due to using     |
|      |                                     | Scan-to-Email while the buffer is being used      |
|      |                                     | send mail at the same time.                       |
| 14-  | Data Size Too Large                 | Transmission was cancelled because the            |
| 12   |                                     | detected size of the file was too large.          |
| 14-  | Send Cancelled                      | Processing is interrupted because the user        |
| 13   |                                     | pressed Stop.                                     |
| 14-  | Security Locked File Error          | Update the software because of the defective      |
| 14   |                                     | software.   |
| 14-  | Mail Data Error                     | The transmitting a mail is interrupted via DCS    |
| 15   |                                     | due to the incorrect data.                        |
|      |                                     | Update the software because of the defective      |
|      |                                     | software.   |
| 14-  | Maximum Division Number Error       | When a mail is divided for the mail transmission  |
| 16   |                                     | and the division number of a mail are more than   |
|      |                                     | the specified number, the mail transmission is    |

| Code | Meaning                              | Suggested Cause/Action                               |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|
|      |                                      | interrupted.   |
|      |                                      | Update the software because of the defective         |
|      |                                      | software.  |
| 14-  | Incorrect Ticket                     | Update the software because of the defective         |
| 17   |                                      | software.  |
| 14-  | Access to MCS File Error             | The access to MCS file is denied due to the no       |
| 18   |                                      | permission of access.                                |
|      |                                      | Update the software because of the defective         |
|      |                                      | software.  |
| 14-  | SMTP Authentication error            | Make sure the administrator's e-mail address is same |
| 20   |                                      | as the SMTP authentication address or POP before     |
|      |                                      | SMTP address.  |
| 14-  | Transmission error of S/MIME         | Register the correct user certificate and device     |
| 21   |                                      | certificate.   |
| 14-  | MCS File Creation Failed             | Failed to create the MCS file because:               |
| 30   |                                      | The number of files created with other               |
|      |                                      | applications on the Document Server has              |
|      |                                      | exceeded the limit.                                  |
|      |                                      | HDD is full or not operating correctly.              |
|      |                                      | Software error.                                      |
| 14-  | UFS File Creation Failed             | UFS file could not be created:                       |
| 31   |                                      | Not enough space in UFS area to handle both          |
|      |                                      | Scan-to-Email and IFAX transmission.                 |
|      |                                      | HDD full or not operating correctly.                 |
|      |                                      | Software error.                                      |
| 14-  | Cancelled the Mail Due to Error      | Error detected with NFAX and send was                |
| 32   | Detected by NFAX                     | cancelled due to a software error.                   |
| 14-  | No Mail Address For the Machine      | Neither the mail address of the machine nor the      |
| 33   |                                      | mail address of the network administrator is         |
|      |                                      | registered.  |
| 14-  | Address designated in the domain for | Operational error in normal mail sending or          |
| 34   | SMTP sending does not exist          | direct SMTP sending.                                 |
|      |                                      | Check the address selected in the address book       |
|      |                                      | for SMTP sending.                                    |
|      |                                      | Check the domain selection.                          |
| 14-  | Mail Job Task Error                  | Due to an FCU mail job task error, the send was      |
| 50   |                                      | cancelled:   |
| F.0  |                                      | Address book was being edited during creation        |

| Code | Meaning                               | Suggested Cause/Action                              |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|
|      |                                       | of the notification mail.                           |
|      |                                       | Software error.                                     |
| 14-  | UCS Destination Download Error        | Not even one return notification can be downloaded: |
| 51   |                                       | The address book was being edited.                  |
|      |                                       | The number for the specified destination does       |
|      |                                       | not exist (it was deleted or edited after the job   |
|      |                                       | was created).                                       |
| 14-  | Send Cancel Failed                    | The cancel operation by the user failed to cancel   |
| 60   |                                       | the send operation.                                 |
| 14-  | Notification Mail Send Failed for All | All addresses for return notification mail failed.  |
| 61   | Destinations                          |   |
| 14-  | Transmission Error due to the         | When the 0 line page exists in received pages       |
| 62   | existence of zero line page           | with G3 communication, the transmission is          |
|      |                                       | interrupted.  |
| 14-  | Fax Communication Unit:               | Check the followings.                               |
| 63   | Transmission Error                    | Name of SMTP server                                 |
|      |                                       | Port number of SMTP                                 |
|      |                                       | DNS setting   |
|      |                                       | Server name (FTP)                                   |
|      |                                       | Path name (computer name and shared folder          |
|      |                                       | name at SMTP/ NCP)                                  |
|      |                                       | Active protocol setting (Netware/ NCP)              |
|      |                                       | NW flame type (NCP)                                 |
|      |                                       | Log-on mode (NDS tree/ bindery)                     |
| -    |                                       | Check the SMTP server.                              |
|      |                                       | Check if the SMTP server works normally and is      |
|      |                                       | connected to the network.                           |
|      |                                       | Check if the settings of the SMTP are correct.      |
| -    |                                       | Check the DNS server.                               |
|      |                                       | Check if the DNS server works normally and is       |
|      |                                       | connected to the network.                           |
|      |                                       | Check if the settings of the DNS server are         |
|      |                                       | correct.  |
| -    |                                       | Check the network.                                  |
|      |                                       | Check if the LAN works normally.                    |
|      |                                       | Check if the no firewall exists.                    |
| -    |                                       | Check the destination folder for the data transfer. |
|      |                                       | Check if the destination folder works normally.     |

| Code | Meaning                          | Suggested Cause/Action  |  |  |
|------|----------------------------------|---|--|--|
|      |                                  | Check if the settings of the destination folder are   |  |  |
|      |                                  | correct.  |  |  |
| -    |                                  | Ask an administrator of the direct SMTP server in   |  |  |
|      |                                  | which the data is supposed to be transferred.   |  |  |
|      |                                  | Check if the destination SMTP server works  |  |  |
|      |                                  | normally.   |  |  |
|      |                                  | Check if the settings of the destination SMTP   |  |  |
|      |                                  | server are correct.   |  |  |
| 15-  | POP3/IMAP4 Server Not Registered | At startup, the system detected that the IP   |  |  |
| 01   |                                  | address of the POP3/IMAP4 server has not been   |  |  |
|      |                                  | registered in the machine.  |  |  |
| 15-  | POP3/IMAP4 Mail Account          | The POP3/IMAP4 mail account has not been  |  |  |
| 02   | Information Not Registered       | registered.   |  |  |
| 15-  | Mail Address Not Registered      | The mail address has not been registered.   |  |  |
| 03   |                                  |   |  |  |
| 15-  | DCS Mail Receive Error           | • Error other than 15-11 to 15-18.  |  |  |
| 10   |                                  |   |  |  |
| 15-  | Connection Error                 | The DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server could not be found:  |  |  |
| 11   |                                  | The IP address for DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server   |  |  |
|      |                                  | is not stored in the machine.   |  |  |
|      |                                  | The DNS IP address is not registered.   |  |  |
| 45   | A. Ab a signation France         | Network not operating correctly.  PORS (IMARA a and a with artisation fails do                |  |  |
| 15-  | Authorization Error              | POP3/IMAP4 send authorization failed:   |  |  |
| 12   |                                  | Incorrect IFAX user name or password.  Another devices such as the DC attempted.              |  |  |
|      |                                  | Another device, such as the PC, attempted access.   |  |  |
|      |                                  |   |  |  |
| 15-  | Receive Buffer Full              | <ul><li>POP3/IMAP4 settings incorrect.</li><li>Occurs only during manual reception.</li></ul> |  |  |
| 13   | Receive Bullet I ull             | Transmission cannot be received due to  |  |  |
|      |                                  | insufficient buffer space. The buffer is being used   |  |  |
|      |                                  | for mail send or Scan-to-Email.   |  |  |
| 15-  | Mail Header Format Error         | The mail header is not standard format. For   |  |  |
| 14   |                                  | example, the Date line description is incorrect.  |  |  |
| 15-  | Mail Divide Error                | The e-mail is not in standard format. There is no   |  |  |
| 15   |                                  | boundary between parts of the e-mail, including   |  |  |
|      |                                  | the header.   |  |  |
| 15-  | Mail Size Receive Error          | The mail cannot be received because it is too   |  |  |
| 16   |                                  | large.  |  |  |
|      | 1                                |   |  |  |

| Code | Meaning                         | Suggested Cause/Action  |
|------|---------------------------------|---|
| 15-  | Receive Timeout                 | May occur during manual receiving only because  |
| 17   |                                 | the network is not operating correctly.   |
| 15-  | Incomplete Mail Received        | Only one portion of the mail was received.  |
| 18   |                                 |   |
| 15-  | Final Destination for Transfer  | The format of the final destination for the transfer  |
| 31   | Request Reception Format Error  | request was incorrect.  |
| 15-  | Send/Delivery Destination Error | The transmission cannot be delivered to the final   |
| 39   |                                 | destination:  |
|      |                                 | Destination file format is incorrect.   |
|      |                                 | Could not create the destination for the file   |
|      |                                 | transmission.   |
| 15-  | SMTP Receive Error              | Reception rejected because the transaction  |
| 41   |                                 | exceeded the limit for the "Auth. E-mail RX"  |
|      |                                 | setting.  |
| 15-  | Off Ramp Gateway Error          | The delivery destination address was specified  |
| 42   |                                 | with Off Ramp Gateway OFF.  |
| 15-  | Address Format Error            | Format error in the address of the Off Ramp   |
| 43   |                                 | Gateway.  |
| 15-  | Addresses Over                  | The number of addresses for the Off Ramp  |
| 44   |                                 | Gateway exceeded the limit of 30.   |
| 15-  | Attachment File Format Error    | The attached file is not TIFF format.   |
| 61   |                                 |   |
| 15-  | TIFF File Compatibility Error   | Could not receive transmission due to:  |
| 62   |                                 | Resolution error  |
|      |                                 | Image of resolution greater than 200 dpi without  |
|      |                                 | extended memory.  |
|      |                                 | Resolution is not supported.  |
|      |                                 | Page size error  The size arror  The size arrow  The size |
|      |                                 | The page size was larger than A3.   |
|      |                                 | Compression error  The state of the sta |
|      |                                 | File was compressed with other than MH, MR, or  |
| 15   | TIEE Darameter Error            | MMR.  |
| 15-  | TIFF Parameter Error            | The TIFF file sent as the attachment could not be   |
| 63   |                                 | received because the TIFF header is incorrect:  |
|      |                                 | The TIFF file attachment is a type not supported.  The TIFF file attachment is corrupted.   |
|      |                                 | <ul><li>The TIFF file attachment is corrupted.</li><li>Software error.</li></ul>  |
| 15   | TIEE Doggmaragaign Error        |   |
| 15-  | TIFF Decompression Error        | The file received as an attachment caused the TIFF  |

| Code | Meaning                           | Suggested Cause/Action                               |  |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| 64   |                                   | decompression error:                                 |  |
|      |                                   | The TIFF format of the attachment is corrupted.      |  |
|      |                                   | Software error.                                      |  |
| 15-  | Not Binary Image Data             | The file could not be received because the           |  |
| 71   |                                   | attachment was not binary image data.                |  |
| 15-  | MDN Status Error                  | The disposition line in the header of the Return     |  |
| 73   |                                   | Receipt could not be found, or there is a problem    |  |
|      |                                   | with the firmware.                                   |  |
| 15-  | MDN Message ID Error              | Could not find the Original Message ID line in       |  |
| 74   |                                   | the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a      |  |
|      |                                   | problem with the firmware.                           |  |
| 15-  | Mail Job Task Read Error          | Could not receive the transmission because the       |  |
| 80   |                                   | destination buffer is full and the destination could |  |
|      |                                   | not be created (this error may occur when            |  |
|      |                                   | receiving a transfer request or a request for        |  |
|      |                                   | notification of reception).                          |  |
| 15-  | Repeated Destination Registration | Could not repeat receive the transmission            |  |
| 81   | Error                             | because the destination buffer is full and the       |  |
|      |                                   | destination could not be created (this error may     |  |
|      |                                   | occur when receiving a transfer request or a         |  |
|      |                                   | request for notification of reception).              |  |
| 15-  | Send Registration Error           | Could not receive the file for transfer to the final |  |
| 91   |                                   | destination:   |  |
|      |                                   | The format of the final destination or the transfer  |  |
|      |                                   | destination is incorrect.                            |  |
|      |                                   | Destinations are full so the final and transfer      |  |
|      |                                   | destinations could not be created.                   |  |
| 15-  | Memory Overflow                   | Transmission could not be received because           |  |
| 92   |                                   | memory overflowed during the transaction.            |  |
| 15-  | Memory Access Error               | Transaction could not complete due to a              |  |
| 93   |                                   | malfunction of SAF memory.                           |  |
| 15-  | Incorrect ID Code                 | The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for          |  |
| 94   |                                   | transfer request, because the ID code in the         |  |
|      |                                   | incoming e-mail did not match the ID code            |  |
|      |                                   | registered in the machine.                           |  |
| 15-  | Transfer Station Function         | The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for          |  |
| 95   |                                   | transfer because the transfer function was           |  |
|      |                                   | unavailable.   |  |

| Code | Meaning                                |                          | Suggested Cause/Action                          |
|------|--|--------------------------|---|
| 16-  | No IP address registered               | • The                    | machine does not get an IP address              |
| 00   |  | bec                      | ause the DNS server has not been registered     |
|      |  | for t                    | he remote machine or IP address of the          |
|      |  | rem                      | ote machine has not been registered.            |
|      |  | • Reg                    | sister the DNS server for the remote machine    |
|      |  | or c                     | onfigure an IP address of the remote            |
|      |  | mad                      | chine.  |
| 22-  | Original length exceeded the           | • Divi                   | de the original into more than one page.        |
| 00   | maximum scan length                    | • Che                    | eck the resolution used for scanning. Lower     |
|      |  | the                      | scan resolution if possible.                    |
|      |  | • Add                    | optional page memory.                           |
| 22-  | Memory overflow while receiving        | • Wai                    | t for the files in the queue to be sent.        |
| 01   |  | • Del                    | ete unnecessary files from memory.              |
|      |  | • Trai                   | nsfer the substitute reception files to another |
|      |  | fax                      | machine, if the machine's printer is busy or    |
|      |  | out                      | of order.                                       |
|      |  | • Add                    | an optional SAF memory card or hard disk.       |
| 22-  | TX or RX job stalled due to line       | • The                    | job started normally but did not finish         |
| 02   | disconnection at the other end         | norr                     | mally; data may or may not have been            |
|      |  | rece                     | eived fully.                                    |
|      |  | • Res                    | tart the machine.                               |
| 22-  | The machine cannot store received      | • Upo                    | late the ROM                                    |
| 04   | data in the SAF                        | • Rep                    | place the FCU.                                  |
| 22-  | No G3 parameter confirmation           | <ul> <li>Def</li> </ul>  | ective FCU board or firmware.                   |
| 05   | answer                                 |                          |   |
| 22-  | The fax number / e-mail address        | <ul> <li>Soft</li> </ul> | ware error.                                     |
| 06   | entered or selected by the user does   | Inst                     | all lateset FCU firmware.                       |
|      | not match that of the destination.     | • FCl                    | J board defective                               |
|      | (This may occur because of a bug.)     | Rep                      | place the FCU.                                  |
|      |  |                          |   |
|      |  |                          |   |
| 22-  | File to send missing during IP-Fax /   |                          |   |
| 07   | Internet Fax / Scan to Email / Scan to |                          |   |
| _    | Folder transmission.                   |                          |   |
| 22-  | File missing when printing the         |                          |   |
| 08   | configuration page.                    |                          |   |
| 22-  | File missing when receiving fax.       |                          |   |
| 09   |  |                          |   |

| Code | Meaning                            |   | Suggested Cause/Action                       |
|------|------------------------------------|---|--|
| 22-  | File missing is when storing a     |   |  |
| 10   | received fax file.                 |   |  |
| 23-  | Data read timeout during           | • | Restart the machine.                         |
| 00   | construction                       | • | Replace the FCU.                             |
| 25-  | The machine software resets itself | • | Update the ROM                               |
| 00   | after a fatal transmission error   | • | Replace the FCU.                             |
|      | occurred                           |   |  |
| F0-  | V.34 modem error                   | • | Replace the FCU.                             |
| xx   |                                    |   |  |
| F6-  | SG3 modem error                    | • | Update the SG3 modem ROM.                    |
| xx   |                                    | • | Replace the SG3 board.                       |
|      |                                    | • | Check for line noise or other line problems. |
|      |                                    | • | Try communicating another V.8/V.34 fax.      |

# **Fax Connection Unit Error Codes**

# Fax Connection Unit Error Code List

#### MACHINE

| Error  | Possible Causes                                       | Troubleshooting Procedures   |
|--------|---|------------------------------|
| Code   |   |                              |
| 01(1)  | IPv4/IPv6 not enabled                                 | Enable IPv4 and IPv6         |
| 01(3)  | "Cancel" is pressed by user.                          | -                            |
| 01(4)  | A false connection ID is being used.                  | Check that the network is    |
| 01(5)  | Network is disconnected because of no response within | established.                 |
|        | a specified time.                                     |                              |
| 01(14) | Either this machine or the machine at the other end   | Exit SP or initial settings. |
|        | has entered SP or Initial settings.                   | Wait until the connection    |
|        | An established connection exists.                     | has finished.                |

#### **MACHINE**

| Error |   | Possible Causes                        |   | Troubleshooting Procedures |
|-------|---|--|---|----------------------------|
| Code  |   |  |   |                            |
| 02(5) | • | Wrong IP address/host name was used.   | • | Enter the correct IP       |
|       | • | The main power of the other machine at |   | address/host name          |
|       |   | destination is OFF.                    | • | Turn ON the main power.    |
|       | • | LAN cable is disconnected.             | • | Connect the LAN cable      |
|       | • | Network is rebooting.                  | • | Wait until rebooting has   |
|       |   |  |   | finished.                  |

#### **MACHINE**

| Error |   | Possible Causes                             | Troubleshoot         | ing Procedures   |
|-------|---|---|----------------------|------------------|
| Code  |   |   |                      |                  |
| 03    | • | No user authentication (i.e.                | Configure the use    | r authentication |
|       |   | Basic/Windows/LDAP/Custom Auth.) applies to | setting for client a | nd remote        |
|       |   | fax application.                            | machines as follow   | ws:              |
|       | • | Settings other than user authentication are | Client Machine       | Remote Machine   |
|       |   | applied to the fax application.             | OFF                  | OFF              |
|       |   |   | ON                   | OFF              |
|       |   |   | ON                   | ON               |

# MACHINE

| Error | Possible Causes                                    |   | Troubleshooting Procedures     |
|-------|--|---|--------------------------------|
| Code  |  |   |                                |
| 04    | Although the same user is registered on the remote | • | Register the same user to both |
|       | machine and client machine, the user name and      |   | the remote machine and client  |
|       | login password do not match.                       |   | machine.                       |
|       |  | • | Make sure to match the         |
|       |  |   | username and login password.   |

# MACHINE

| Error Code | Possible Causes                        | Troubleshooting Procedures                |
|------------|--|---|
| 05         | An unauthorized user tried to connect. | Authorize the user to use fax connection. |

#### MACHINE

| Error | Possible Causes           | Troubleshooting Procedures                             |
|-------|---------------------------|--|
| Code  |                           |  |
| 06    | Timeout error on the node | Adjust the value of SP5-741-001 to prolong the timeout |
|       | authentication            | for node authentication.                               |

#### MACHINE

| Error | Possible Causes                      | Troubleshooting Procedures                    |
|-------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Code  |                                      |   |
| 07    | Multiple destinations are set in the | On the client machine, execute SP5-801-021 to |
|       | client machine.                      | clear AICS memory                             |

#### MACHINE

| Error |   | Possible Causes                         |   | Troubleshooting Procedures         |
|-------|---|---|---|------------------------------------|
| Code  |   |   |   |                                    |
| 08(1) | • | A client machine connects to another    | • | Connect to the remote machine.     |
|       |   | client machine.                         | • | Register the client machine to the |
|       | • | The client machine is not registered on |   | remote machine as a destination.   |
|       |   | the remote machine as destinations.     |   |                                    |
| 08(2) | • | A remote machine connects to another    | • | Connect to the client machine.     |
|       |   | Remote Machine.                         | • | Check the remote machine           |
|       | • | The wrong remote machine is registered  |   | registered on the client machine.  |
|       |   | on the client machine.                  |   |                                    |

# **IFAX Troubleshooting**

# **IFAX Troubleshooting**

Use the following procedures to determine whether the machine or another part of the network is causing the problem.

| Communication     | Item                   | Troubleshooting Procedures                         |
|-------------------|------------------------|--|
| Route             |                        |  |
| General LAN       | Connection with the    | Check that the LAN cable is connected to the       |
|                   | LAN                    | machine.   |
|                   |                        | Check that the LEDs on the hub are lit.            |
|                   | 2. LAN activity        | Check that other devices connected to the LAN can  |
|                   |                        | communicate through the LAN.                       |
| Between IFAX and  | Network settings on    | Check the network settings on the PC.              |
| PC                | the PC                 | Check with the network administrator for the IP    |
|                   |                        | address. (Is the IP address registered in the      |
|                   |                        | TCP/IP properties in the network setup             |
|                   |                        | correct?)  |
|                   | 2. Check that PC can   | Use the "ping" command on the PC to contact the    |
|                   | connect with the       | machine.   |
|                   | machine                | At the MS-DOS prompt, type ping then the IP        |
|                   |                        | address of the machine, then press Enter.          |
|                   | 3. LAN settings in the | Check the LAN parameters                           |
|                   | machine                | Check if there is an IP address conflict with      |
|                   |                        | other PCs.   |
|                   |                        | Use the "Network" function in the "Settings"       |
|                   |                        | menu.  |
|                   |                        | If there is an IP address conflict, inform the     |
|                   |                        | administrator.                                     |
| Between machine   | 1. LAN settings in the | Check the LAN parameters                           |
| and e-mail server | machine                | Check if there is an IP address conflict with      |
|                   |                        | other PCs.   |
|                   |                        | Use the "Network" function in the "Settings" menu. |
|                   |                        | If there is an IP address conflict, inform the     |
|                   |                        | administrator.                                     |
|                   | 2. E-mail account on   | Make sure that the machine can log into the e-     |
|                   | the server             | mail server.                                       |
|                   |                        | Check that the account and password stored in      |
|                   |                        | the server are the same as in the machine.         |

| Communication       | Item                   | Troubleshooting Procedures                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|---|
| Route               |                        |   |
|                     |                        | Ask the administrator to check.                   |
|                     | 3. E-mail server       | Make sure that the client devices which have an   |
|                     |                        | account in the server can send/receive e-mail.    |
|                     |                        | Ask the administrator to check.                   |
|                     |                        | Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number  |
|                     |                        | as the destination. The machine receives the      |
|                     |                        | returned e-mail if the communication is performed |
|                     |                        | successfully.                                     |
| Between e-mail      | 1. E-mail account on   | Make sure that the PC can log into the e-mail     |
| server and internet | the Server             | server.   |
|                     |                        | Check that the account and password stored in     |
|                     |                        | the server are the same as in the machine.        |
|                     |                        | Ask the administrator to check.                   |
|                     | 2. E-mail server       | Make sure that the client devices which have an   |
|                     |                        | account in the server can send/receive e-mail.    |
|                     |                        | Ask the administrator to check.                   |
|                     |                        | Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number  |
|                     |                        | as the destination. The machine receives the      |
|                     |                        | returned e-mail if the communication is performed |
|                     |                        | successfully.                                     |
|                     | 3. Destination e-mail  | Make sure that the e-mail address is actually     |
|                     | address                | used.   |
|                     |                        | Check that the e-mail address contains no         |
|                     |                        | incorrect characters such as spaces.              |
|                     | 4. Router settings     | Use the "ping" command to contact the router.     |
|                     |                        | Check that other devices connected to the         |
|                     |                        | router can sent data over the router.             |
|                     |                        | Ask the administrator of the server to check.     |
|                     | 5. Error message by e- | Check whether e-mail can be sent to another       |
|                     | mail from the network  | address on the same network, using the            |
|                     | of the destination.    | application e-mail software.                      |
|                     |                        | Check the error e-mail message.                   |
|                     |                        | Inform the administrator of the LAN.              |

# **IP-Fax Troubleshooting**

# **IP-Fax Transmission**

# Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name

| Che | eck Point                                       | Troubleshooting Procedures             |
|-----|---|--|
| 1   | LAN cable connected?                            | Check the LAN cable connection.        |
| 2   | Specified IP address/hostname correct?          | Check the IP address/host name.        |
| 3   | Firewall/NAT installed?                         | The firewall cannot be breached. Send  |
|     |   | by another method (Fax, Internet Fax)  |
| 4   | Transmission sent manually?                     | Manual sending not supported.          |
| 5   | IP address of local machine registered?         | Register the IP address.               |
| 6   | Remote terminal port number setting other than  | Send by specifying the port number.    |
|     | 1720 (when using H.323) or 5060 (when using     |  |
|     | SIP)?   |  |
| 7   | Specified port number correct?                  | Confirm the port number of the remote  |
|     |   | fax.                                   |
| 8   | DNS server registered when host name specified? | Contact the network administrator.     |
| 9   | Remote fax a T.38 terminal?                     | Check whether the remote fax is a T38  |
|     |   | terminal.                              |
| 10  | Remote fax switched off or busy?                | Check that the remote fax is ON.       |
| 11  | Network bandwidth too narrow?                   | Request the network administrator to   |
|     |   | increase the bandwidth.                |
|     |   | Raise the delay level.                 |
|     |   | (IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3)               |
|     |   | IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the    |
|     |   | DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1. |
| 12  | Remote fax cancelled transmission?              | Check whether the remote fax cancelled |
|     |   | the transmission.                      |

# Cannot send via VoIP Gateway

| Check Point |                                      | Troubleshooting Procedures         |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1           | LAN cable connected?                 | Check the LAN cable connection.    |
| 2           | VoIP Gateway T.38 standard?          | Contact the network administrator. |
| 3           | VoIP Gateway installed correctly?    | Contact the network administrator. |
| 4           | VoIP Gateway power switched on?      | Contact the network administrator. |
| 5           | Is the IP address/host name of the   | Check the IP address/host name.    |
|             | specified Gateway correct?           |                                    |
| 6           | Number of the specified fax correct? | Check the remote fax number.       |

| 7  | Firewall/NAT installed?             | The firewall cannot be breached. Send by another  |
|----|-------------------------------------|---|
|    |                                     | method (Fax, Internet Fax)                        |
| 8  | Transmission sent manually?         | Manual sending not supported.                     |
| 9  | IP address of local fax registered? | Register the IP address.                          |
| 10 | DNS registered when host name       | Contact the network administrator.                |
|    | specified?                          |   |
| 11 | Remote fax a G3 fax?                | Check that the remote fax is a G3 fax.            |
| 12 | G3 fax connected to VoIP gateway?   | Check that G3 fax is connected.                   |
| 13 | Remote G3 fax turned ON?            | Check that G3 fax is ON.                          |
| 14 | Network bandwidth too narrow?       | Request the network administrator to increase the |
|    |                                     | bandwidth.  |
|    |                                     | Raise the network delay level.                    |
|    |                                     | (IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3)                          |
|    |                                     | IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed.    |
|    |                                     | Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.                       |

# Cannot send by Alias Fax number.

| Check Point |  | Troubleshooting Procedures                  |
|-------------|--|---|
| 1           | LAN cable connected?                       | Check the LAN cable connection.             |
| 2           | Number of specified Alias fax correct?     | Confirm the Alias of the remote fax.        |
|             |  | Error Code: 13-14                           |
| 3           | Firewall/NAT installed?                    | The firewall cannot be breached. Send by    |
|             |  | another method (Fax, Internet Fax)          |
| 4           | Transmission sent manually?                | Manual sending not supported.               |
| 5           | Gatekeeper/SIP server installed correctly? | Contact the network administrator.          |
| 6           | Gatekeeper/SIP server power turned ON?     | Contact the network administrator.          |
| 7           | IP address/host name of Gatekeeper/SIP     | Check the IP address/host name.             |
|             | server correct?                            |   |
| 8           | DNS server registered when Gatekeeper/SIP  | Contact the network administrator.          |
|             | server host name specified?                |   |
| 9           | Enable H.323/Enable SIP SW is set to on?   | Check the settings.                         |
|             |  | See User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0/SW 34 Bit 1  |
| 10          | IP address of local fax registered?        | Register the IP address of the local fax.   |
| 11          | Alias number of local fax registered?      | Register the Alias number of the local fax. |
| 12          | Remote fax registered in Gatekeeper?       | Contact the network administrator.          |
| 13          | Remote fax a T.38 terminal?                | Check whether the remote fax is a T38       |
|             |  | terminal.                                   |
| 14          | Remote fax switched off or busy?           | Contact the network administrator.          |

| 15 | Network bandwidth too narrow?      | Request the system administrator to increase |
|----|------------------------------------|--|
|    |                                    | the bandwidth.                               |
|    |                                    | Raise the delay level.                       |
|    |                                    | (IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3)                     |
|    |                                    | Lower the modem transmission baud rate.      |
|    |                                    | (IPFAX SW 05)                                |
| 16 | Remote fax cancelled transmission? | Check whether the remote fax cancelled the   |
|    |                                    | transmission.                                |

# IP-Fax Reception

# Cannot receive via IP Address/Host Name.

| Ch | neck Point                             | Troubleshooting Procedures                       |
|----|--|--|
|    |  |  |
| 1  | LAN cable connected?                   | Check the LAN cable connection.                  |
| 2  | Firewall/NAT installed?                | The firewall cannot be breached. Send by another |
|    |  | method (Fax, Internet Fax)                       |
| 3  | IP address of local fax registered?    | Register the IP address.                         |
| 4  | Port number specified at remote sender | Request the sender to specify the port number.   |
|    | fax (if required)?                     |  |
| 5  | Specified port number correct (if      | Request the sender to check the port number.     |
|    | required)?                             |  |
| 6  | DNS server registered when host name   | Contact the network administrator.               |
|    | specified on sender side?              | <b>♦</b> Note                                    |
|    |  | The sender machine displays this error code      |
|    |  | if the sender fax is a Ricoh model.              |
| 7  | Network bandwidth too narrow?          | Request the system administrator to increase the |
|    |  | bandwidth.                                       |
|    |  | Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the |
|    |  | receiving side.                                  |
|    |  | (IPFAX SW06)                                     |
| 8  | Remote fax cancelled transmission?     | Check whether the remote fax cancelled the       |
|    |  | transmission.                                    |

# Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway.

| Check Point            |                                   | Troubleshooting Procedures               |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 LAN cable connected? |                                   | Check the LAN cable connection.          |
| 2                      | Firewall/NAT installed?           | The firewall cannot be breached. Send by |
|                        |                                   | another method (Fax, Internet Fax)       |
| 3                      | VoIP Gateway installed correctly? | Contact the network administrator.       |

| 4 | VoIP Gateway power turned ON?          | Contact the network administrator.            |
|---|--|---|
| 5 | IP address/host name of specified VoIP | Request the remote fax to check the IP        |
|   | Gateway correct on sender's side?      | address/host name.                            |
| 6 | DNS server registered when host name   | Contact the network administrator.            |
|   | specified on sender side?              |   |
| 7 | Network bandwidth too narrow?          | Request the network administrator to increase |
|   |  | the bandwidth.                                |
| 8 | G3 fax connected?                      | Check that G3 fax is connected.               |
| 9 | G3 fax power turned ON?                | Check that G3 fax is ON.                      |

# Cannot receive by Alias Fax number.

| Check Point |  | Troubleshooting Procedures                           |
|-------------|--|--|
| 1           | LAN cable connected?                         | Check the LAN cable connection.                      |
| 2           | Firewall/NAT installed?                      | The firewall cannot be breached. Send by             |
|             |  | another method (Fax, Internet Fax)                   |
| 3           | Gatekeeper/SIP server installed correctly?   | Contact the network administrator.                   |
|             |  | <b>↓</b> Note  |
|             |  | <ul> <li>The sender machine displays this</li> </ul> |
|             |  | error code when the sender fax is a                  |
|             |  | Ricoh model.   |
| 4           | Power to Gatekeeper/SIP server turned ON?    | Contact the network administrator.                   |
|             |  | <b>↓</b> Note  |
|             |  | <ul> <li>The sender machine displays this</li> </ul> |
|             |  | error code when the sender fax is a                  |
|             |  | Ricoh model.   |
| 5           | IP address/host name of Gatekeeper/SIP       | Request the sender to check the IP                   |
|             | server correct on the sender's side?         | address/host name.                                   |
|             |  | <b>♦</b> Note  |
|             |  | <ul> <li>The sender machine displays this</li> </ul> |
|             |  | error code when the sender fax is a                  |
|             |  | Ricoh model.   |
| 6           | DNS server registered when Gatekeeper/SIP    | Contact the network administrator.                   |
|             | server host name specified on sender's side? | <b>♦</b> Note  |
|             |  | <ul> <li>The sender machine displays this</li> </ul> |
|             |  | error code when the sender fax is a                  |
|             |  | Ricoh model.   |
| 7           | Enable H.323/Enable SIP SW set to on?        | Request the sender to check the settings.            |
| L           |  | User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0/SW 34 Bit 1               |

### 3. Troubleshooting

|    |  | <b></b> Note                                 |
|----|--|--|
|    |  | Only if the remote sender fax is a           |
|    |  | Ricoh fax.                                   |
| 8  | Local fax IP address registered?       | Register the IP address.                     |
| 9  | Local fax Alias number registered?     | Register the Alias number.                   |
| 10 | Network bandwidth too narrow?          | Request the system administrator to increase |
|    |  | the bandwidth.                               |
|    |  | Lower the start modem reception baud rate on |
|    |  | the receiving side.                          |
|    |  | (IPFAX SW06)                                 |
| 11 | Remote fax cancelled transmission?     | Check whether the remote fax cancelled the   |
|    |  | transmission.                                |
| 12 | Local fax registered in Gatekeeper/SIP | Contact the network administrator.           |
|    | server?                                | <b>♦</b> Note                                |
|    |  | The sender machine displays this             |
|    |  | error code when the sender fax is a          |
|    |  | Ricoh model.                                 |

# **Cautions**



Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging
the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the
power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.



The main power LED lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main
machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is
accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

# **Service Program Tables**

# SP1-XXX (BIT Switches)

| 1   | Mode No.            |             | Function  |
|-----|---------------------|-------------|---|
| 101 | System Sw           | ritch       |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for system settings for the fax option        |
|     | 032                 | 1F          | "Bit Switches - 1" : "System Switches"                                |
| 102 | Ifax Switch         |             |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for internet fax settings for the fax option  |
|     | 016                 | 0F          | "Bit Switches - 2": "I-Fax Switches"                                  |
| 103 | Printer Swi         | tch         |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for printer settings for the fax option       |
|     | 016                 | 0F          | "Bit Switches - 2": "Printer Switches"                                |
| 104 | Communic            | ation Swite | ch  |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for communication settings for the fax option |
|     | 032                 | 1F          | "Bit Switches - 3" : "Communication Switches"                         |
| 105 | G3-1 Switc          | h           |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the standard G3  |
|     | 016                 | 0F          | board   |
|     |                     |             | "Bit Switches - 4": "G3 Switches"                                     |
| 106 | G3-2 Switc          | h           |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3  |
|     | 016                 | 0F          | board   |
|     |                     |             | "Bit Switches - 5": "G3-2 and G3-3 Switches"                          |
| 107 | G3-3 Switc          | h           |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3  |
|     | 016                 | 0F          | board   |
|     |                     |             | "Bit Switches - 5": "G3-2 and G3-3 Switches"                          |
| 108 | G4 Internal         | Switch      |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Not used (Do not change the bit switches)                             |
|     | 032                 | 1F          |   |
| 109 | G4 Parameter Switch |             |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Not used (Do not change the bit switches)                             |
|     | 016                 | 0F          |   |
| 111 | IP fax Switch       | ch          |   |
|     | 001 –               | 00 –        | Change the bit switches for optional IP fax parameters                |
|     | 016                 | 0F          | "Bit Switches - 6": "IP Fax Switches"                                 |

# SP2-XXX (RAM)

| 2   | Mode No. |                | Function   |  |
|-----|----------|----------------|--|--|
| 101 | RAM Read | RAM Read/Write |  |  |
|     | 001      |                | Change RAM data for the fax board directly.            |  |
|     |          |                | "Service RAM Addresses"                                |  |
| 102 | Memory D | ump            |  |  |
|     | 001      | G3-1 Memory    | Print out RAM data for the fax board.                  |  |
|     |          | Dump           | "Service RAM Addresses"                                |  |
|     | 002      | G3-2 Memory    | Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.         |  |
|     |          | Dump           |  |  |
|     | 003      | G3-3 Memory    | Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.         |  |
|     |          | Dump           |  |  |
|     | 004      | G4 Memory Dump | Not used   |  |
| 103 | G3-1 NCU | J Parameters   |  |  |
|     | 001 –    | CC, 01 – 22    | NCU parameter settings for the standard G3 board. "NCU |  |
|     | 023      |                | Parameters"  |  |
| 104 | G3-2 NCU | J Parameters   |  |  |
|     | 001 –    | CC, 01 – 22    | NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. "NCU |  |
|     | 023      |                | Parameters"  |  |
| 105 | G3-3 NCU | J Parameters   |  |  |
|     | 001 –    | CC, 01 – 22    | NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. "NCU |  |
|     | 023      |                | Parameters"  |  |

# SP3-XXX (Machine Set)

| 3   | Mode N   | lo.           | Function  |
|-----|----------|---------------|---|
| 101 | Service  | Station       |   |
|     | 001      | Fax Number    | Enter the fax number of the service station.                      |
|     | 002      | Select Line   | Select the line type.   |
| 102 | Serial N | lumber        |   |
|     | 000      |               | Enter the fax unit's serial number.                               |
| 103 | PSTN-1   | Port Settings |   |
|     | 001      | Select Line   | Select the line type setting for the G3-1 line. If the machine is |
|     |          |               | installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX (GND)" or "PABX    |
|     |          |               | (FLASH)".   |
|     | 002      | PSTN Access   | Enter the PSTN access number for the                              |
|     |          | Number        | G3-1 line.  |
|     | 003      | Memory Lock   | Not used  |

|     |                    | Disabled        |  |
|-----|--------------------|-----------------|--|
| 104 | PSTN-2             | 2 Port Settings |  |
|     | 001                | Select Line     | Select the line setting for the G3-2 line. If the machine is installed |
|     |                    |                 | on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX (GND)" or "PABX                   |
|     |                    |                 | (FLASH)".  |
|     | 002                | PSTN Access     | Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-2 line.                        |
|     |                    | Number          |  |
|     | 003                | Memory Lock     | Not used   |
|     |                    | Disabled        |  |
|     | 004                | Transmission    | If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax              |
|     |                    | Disabled        | messages on the G3-2 line.   |
| 105 | PSTN-3             | 3 Port Settings |  |
|     | 001                | Select Line     | Select the line setting for the G3-3 line. If the machine is installed |
|     |                    |                 | on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX (GND)" or "PABX                   |
|     |                    |                 | (FLASH)".  |
|     | 002                | PSTN Access     | Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-3 line.                        |
|     |                    | Number          |  |
|     | 003                | Memory Lock     | Not used   |
|     |                    | Disabled        |  |
|     | 004                | Transmission    | If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax              |
|     |                    | Disabled        | messages on the G3-3 line.   |
| 106 | ISDN Port Settings |                 |  |
|     | 001                | Select Line     | Not used (Do not change the settings.)                                 |
|     | 002                | PSTN Access     |  |
|     |                    | Number          |  |
|     | 003                | Memory Lock     |  |
|     |                    | Disabled        |  |
|     | 004                | Transmission    |  |
|     |                    | Disabled        |  |
| 107 | IPFAX              | Port Settings   |  |
|     | 001                | H323 Port       | Sets the H323 port number.   |
|     | 002                | SIP Port        | Sets the SIP port number.  |
|     | 003                | RAS Port        | Sets the RAS port number.  |
|     | 004                | Gatekeeper port | Sets the Gatekeeper port number.                                       |
|     | 005                | T.38 Port       | Sets the T.38 port number.   |
|     | 006                | SIP Server Port | Sets the SIP port number.  |
|     | 007                | IPFAX Protocol  | Select "H323" or "SIP".  |
|     |                    | Priority        |  |

| 201 | FAX SV | FAX SW  |  |  |
|-----|--------|---------|--|--|
|     | 001 –  | 00 – 1F |  |  |
|     | 032    |         |  |  |

# SP4-XXX (ROM Versions)

| 4   | Mode N | No.              | Function                                |
|-----|--------|------------------|---|
| 101 | 001    | FCU ROM Version  | Displays the FCU ROM version.           |
| 102 | 001    | Error Codes      | Displays the latest 64 fax error codes. |
| 103 | 001    | G3-1 ROM Version | Displays the G3-1 modem version.        |
| 104 | 001    | G3-2 ROM Version | Displays the G3-2 modem version.        |
| 105 | 001    | G3-3 ROM Version | Displays the G3-3 modem version.        |
| 106 | 001    | G4 ROM Version   | Not used (Do not change the settings.)  |

# SP5-XXX (RAM Clear)

| 5   | Mode  | Function  |  |
|-----|---|---|--|
|     | No.   |   |  |
| 101 | Initialize                                      | SRAM (except Secure)  |  |
|     | 000   | Initializes the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM, files in the |  |
|     |   | SAF memory, and clock.  |  |
| 102 | Erase All                                       | Files   |  |
|     | 000   | Erases all files stored in the SAF memory.  |  |
| 103 | Reset Bit                                       | Switches (except Secure)  |  |
|     | 000   | Resets the bit switches and user parameters.  |  |
| 104 | Factory S                                       | Setting   |  |
|     | 000   | Resets the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM and files in the   |  |
|     |   | SAF memory.   |  |
| 105 | Reset All                                       | Bit Switches  |  |
|     | 000 Resets all the current bit switch settings. |   |  |
| 106 | Reset Se  | curity Bit Switches   |  |
|     | 000   | Resets only the security bit switches. If you select automatic output/display for the |  |
|     |   | user parameter switches, the security settings are initialized.                       |  |

# SP6-XXX (Reports)

| 6   | Mode  | e No.             | Function  |
|-----|-------|-------------------|---|
| 101 | Syste | em Parameter List |   |
|     | 000   | -                 | Touch the "ON" button to print the system parameter list. |
| 102 | Serv  | ce Monitor Report |   |

|     | 000    | -                 | Touch the "ON" button to print the convice monitor report               |
|-----|--------|-------------------|---|
| 100 |        |                   | Touch the "ON" button to print the service monitor report.              |
| 103 |        | rotocol Dump List | Drinte the court and driver list of all communications for all CO lines |
|     | 001    | G3 All            | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for all G3 lines.   |
|     | 000    | Communications    | Distable and a state of all assess a significant facilities of          |
|     | 002    | G3-1 (All         | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-1        |
|     | 222    | Communications)   | line.   |
|     | 003    | G3-1              | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-     |
|     |        | (1 Communication) | 1 line.   |
|     | 004    | G3-2              | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-2        |
|     |        | (All              | line.   |
|     |        | Communications)   |   |
|     | 005    | G3-2              | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-     |
|     |        | (1 Communication) | 2 line.   |
|     | 006    | G3-3              | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-3        |
|     |        | (All              | line.   |
|     |        | Communications)   |   |
|     | 007    | G3-3              | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-     |
|     |        | (1 Communication) | 3 line.   |
| 104 | G4 P   | rotocol Dump List |   |
|     | 001    | Dch + Bch 1       | Not used (Do not change the settings.)                                  |
|     | 002    | Dch               |   |
|     | 003    | Bch 1 Link Layer  |   |
|     | 004    | Dch Link Layer    |   |
|     | 005    | Dch +Bch 2        |   |
|     | 006    | Bch 2 Link Layer  |   |
| 105 | All Fi | les print out     |   |
|     | 000    | -                 | Prints out all the user files in the SAF memory, including              |
|     |        |                   | confidential messages.  |
|     |        |                   | <b>♦</b> Note   |
|     |        |                   | Do not use this function, unless the customer is having                 |
|     |        |                   | trouble printing confidential messages or recovering files              |
|     |        |                   | stored using the memory lock feature.                                   |
| 106 | Journ  | nal Print out     | -   |
|     | 001    | All Journals      | The machine prints all the communication records on the report.         |
|     | 002    | Specified Date    | The machine prints all communication records after the specified        |
|     |        |                   | date.   |
| 107 | Log l  | ist Print out     |   |
|     | 001    | All log files     | These log print out functions are for designer use only.                |
|     |        |                   |   |

|     | 002   | Printer            |  |
|-----|-------|--------------------|--|
|     | 003   | SC/TRAP Stored     |  |
|     | 004   | Decompression      |  |
|     | 005   | Scanner            |  |
|     | 006   | JOB/SAF            |  |
|     | 007   | Reconstruction     |  |
|     | 800   | JBIG               |  |
|     | 009   | Fax Driver         |  |
|     | 010   | G3CCU              |  |
|     | 011   | Fax Job            |  |
|     | 012   | CCU                |  |
|     | 013   | Scanner Condition  |  |
| 108 | IP Pr | otocol Dump List   |  |
|     | 001   | All Communications | Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the IP fax |
|     |       |                    | line.  |
|     | 002   | 1 Communication    | Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the IP |
|     |       |                    | fax line.  |

### SP7-XXX (Tests)

These are the test modes for PTT approval.

| 7   | Function              |
|-----|-----------------------|
| 101 | G3-1 Modem Tests      |
| 102 | G3-1 DTMF Tests       |
| 103 | Ringer Test           |
| 104 | G3-1 V34 (S2400baud)  |
| 105 | G3-1 V34 (S2800baud)  |
| 106 | G3-1 V34 (S3000baud)  |
| 107 | G3-1 V34 (S3200baud)  |
| 108 | G3-1 V34 (S3429baud)  |
| 109 | Recorded Message Test |
| 110 | G3-2 Modem Tests      |
| 111 | G3-2 DTMF Tests       |
| 112 | G3-2 V34 (S2400baud)  |
| 113 | G3-2 V34 (S2800baud)  |
| 114 | G3-2 V34 (S3000baud)  |
| 115 | G3-2 V34 (S3200baud)  |
| 116 | G3-2 V34 (S3429baud)  |
| 117 | G3-3 Modem Tests      |

| 118       G3-3 DTMF Tests         119       G3-3 V34 (S2400baud)         120       G3-3 V34 (S2800baud)         121       G3-3 V34 (S3000baud)         122       G3-3 V34 (S3200baud)         123       G3-3 V34 (S3429baud)         124       IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used         125       IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used         126       IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         127       IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         128       IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         129       IG3-1 V34 (S3220baud) - Not used         130       IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used         131       IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used         132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used         137       IG3-2 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used |     |   |
|--|-----|---|
| 120 G3-3 V34 (S2800baud) 121 G3-3 V34 (S3000baud) 122 G3-3 V34 (S3200baud) 123 G3-3 V34 (S3429baud) 124 IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used 125 IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used 126 IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 127 IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 128 IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 129 IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 130 IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used 131 IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used 132 IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 133 IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 134 IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 135 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 136 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used  | 118 | G3-3 DTMF Tests                         |
| 121 G3-3 V34 (S3000baud) 122 G3-3 V34 (S3200baud) 123 G3-3 V34 (S3429baud) 124 IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used 125 IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used 126 IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 127 IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 128 IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 129 IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used 130 IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used 131 IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used 132 IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used 133 IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 134 IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 135 IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 136 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used  | 119 | G3-3 V34 (S2400baud)                    |
| 122 G3-3 V34 (S3200baud) 123 G3-3 V34 (S3429baud) 124 IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used 125 IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used 126 IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 127 IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 128 IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 129 IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used 130 IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used 131 IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used 132 IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used 133 IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 134 IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 135 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 136 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used   | 120 | G3-3 V34 (S2800baud)                    |
| 123 G3-3 V34 (S3429baud) 124 IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used 125 IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used 126 IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 127 IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 128 IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 129 IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used 130 IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used 131 IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used 132 IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used 133 IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used 134 IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used 135 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used 136 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used  | 121 | G3-3 V34 (S3000baud)                    |
| 124       IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used         125       IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used         126       IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         127       IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         128       IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         129       IG3-1 V34 (S3220baud) - Not used         130       IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used         131       IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used         132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used   | 122 | G3-3 V34 (S3200baud)                    |
| 125  | 123 | G3-3 V34 (S3429baud)                    |
| 126       IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         127       IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         128       IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         129       IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used         130       IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used         131       IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used         132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used  | 124 | IG3-1 Modem Tests - Not used            |
| 127  | 125 | IG3-1 DTMF Tests - Not used             |
| 128       IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         129       IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used         130       IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used         131       IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used         132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used  | 126 | IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
| 129       IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used         130       IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used         131       IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used         132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used   | 127 | IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
| 130       IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - Not used         131       IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used         132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used  | 128 | IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
| 131       IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used         132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used   | 129 | IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
| 132       IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used         133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used  | 130 | IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
| 133       IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - Not used         134       IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - Not used         135       IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - Not used         136       IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - Not used  | 131 | IG3-2 Modem Tests - Not used            |
| 134 IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - <b>Not used</b> 135 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - <b>Not used</b> 136 IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - <b>Not used</b>  | 132 | IG3-2 DTMF Tests - Not used             |
| 135 IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - <b>Not used</b><br>136 IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - <b>Not used</b>   | 133 | IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
| 136 IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - <b>Not used</b>  | 134 | IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
|  | 135 | IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
| 137 IG3-2 V34 (S3429baud) - <b>Not used</b>  | 136 | IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - <b>Not used</b> |
|  | 137 | IG3-2 V34 (S3429baud) - <b>Not used</b> |

### Bit Switches - 1



• Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

### System Switches

| Sys   | System Switch 00 (SP No. 1-101-001)          |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| No  | Function                                     | Comments   |  |
| 0   | Dedicated transmission                       | Set this bit to 1 before changing any dedicated transmission         |  |
|   | parameter programming                        | parameters.  |  |
|   | 0: Disabled                                  | This setting is automatically reset to "0" after turning off and on. |  |
|   | 1: Enabled                                   |  |  |
| 1   | Not used                                     | Do not change this setting.  |  |
| 2   | Technical data printout on                   | 1: Instead of the personal name, the following data are listed in    |  |
|   | the journal                                  | the journal for each G3 communication.                               |  |
|   | 0: Disabled                                  |  |  |
|   | 1: Enabled                                   |  |  |
|   | Example:                                     |  |  |
|   | <b>0000 32V34 288/264</b> (1) (2)(3) (4) (5) | <b>L0100 03 04</b> (6) (7) (8)                                       |  |
|   | (1): EQM value (Line quality                 | data). A larger number means more errors.                            |  |
|   | (2): Symbol rate (V.34 only)                 |  |  |
|   | (3): Final modem type used                   |  |  |
|   | (4): Starting data rate (for ex              | ample, 288 means 28.8 kbps)  |  |
|   | (5): Final data rate                         |  |  |
|   | (6): RX level (see below for I               | now to read the RX level)  |  |
|   | (7): Total number of error line              | es that occurred during non-ECM reception.                           |  |
|   | (8): Total number of burst en                | or lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.                     |  |
| <ul> <li>EQM and RX level are fixed at "FFFF" in TX mode.</li> <li>The seventh and eighth numbers are fixed at "00" for transmission records</li> </ul> |  |  |  |
|   |  | are fixed at "FFFF" in TX mode.                                      |  |
|   |  | ghth numbers are fixed at "00" for transmission records and ECM      |  |
|   | reception records.                           |  |  |
|   | RX level calculation                         |  |  |
|   | Example:                                     |  |  |

0000 32V34 288/264 L0100 03 04 (1) (2)(3) (4) (5) (6) (7)(8)The four-digit hexadecimal value (N) after "L" indicates the RX level. The **high** byte is given first, followed by the **low** byte. Divide the decimal value of N by -16 to get the RX level. In the above example, the decimal value of N (= 0100 [H]) is 256. So, the actual RX level is 256/-16 = -16 dBNot used 3 Do not change this setting. 4 Line error mark print When "1" is selected, a line error mark is printed on the printout if 0: OFF, 1: ON (print) a line error occurs during reception. This shows error locations when ECM is turned off. 5 G3 communication This is a fault-finding aid. The LCD shows the key parameters parameter display (see "G3 Communication Parameters" below this table). This is 0: Disabled normally disabled because it cancels the CSI display for the user. 1: Enabled Be sure to reset this bit to "0" after testing. Protocol dump list output This is only used for communication troubleshooting. It shows the after each communication content of the transmitted facsimile protocol signals. Always reset 0: Off this bit to 0 after finishing testing. 1: On If system switch 09 bit 6 is at "1", the list is only printed if there was an error during the communication.

#### **G3 Communication Parameters**

Not used

7

|                  | MH: MH compression    | וונ  |
|------------------|-----------------------|--|
|                  | MR: MR compression    |  |
| Compression mode | MMR: MMR compre       |  |
| Compression made |                       |  |
|                  | 44: Superfine (400 x  | . ,  |
|                  | 22: Detail (200 x 200 | • ,  |
|                  | 21: Standard (200 x   | , and the second |
|                  | SF: Superfine (16 x   | 15.4 dots/mm)  |
|                  | F: Fine (8 x 15.4 dot | ts/mm)   |
|                  | D: Detail (8 x 7.7 do | ts/mm)   |
| Resolution       | S: Standard (8 x 3.8  | 5 dots/mm)   |
|                  | 192: 19200 bps        | 24: 2400 bps   |
|                  | 216: 21600 bps        | 48: 4800 bps   |
|                  | 240: 24000 bps        | 72: 7200 bps   |
|                  | 264: 26400 bps        | 96: 9600 bps   |
|                  | 288: 28800 bps        | 120: 12000 bps   |
|                  | 312: 31200 bps        | 144: 14400 bps   |
| Modem rate       | 336: 33600 bps        | 168: 16800 bps   |

Do not change the setting.

|                     | JBO: JBIG compression (Optional mode)  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|
|                     |  |  |
|                     | JBB: JBIG compression (Basic mode)   |  |
| Communication       | ECM: With ECM  |  |
| mode                | NML: With no ECM   |  |
| Width and reduction | A4: A4 (8.3"), no reduction  |  |
|                     | B4: B4 (10.1"), no reduction   |  |
|                     | A3: A3 (11.7"), no reduction   |  |
| I/O rate            | 0: 0 ms/line   |  |
|                     | 5: 5 ms/line   |  |
|                     | 10: 10 ms/line   |  |
|                     | 20: 20 ms/line   |  |
|                     | 25: 2.5 ms/line  |  |
|                     | 40: 40 ms/line   |  |
|                     | Note   |  |
|                     | <ul> <li>"40" is displayed while receiving a fax message using AI short</li> </ul> |  |
|                     | protocol.  |  |

### **System Switch 01** - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

| Syst | System Switch 02 (SP No. 1-101-003) |  |  |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| No   | Function                            | Comments   |  |
| 0-   | Not used                            | Do not change these settings.                                      |  |
| 1    |                                     |  |  |
| 2    | Forced reset after                  | With this setting on, the machine resets itself automatically if a |  |
|      | transmission stalls                 | transmission stalls and fails to complete the job.                 |  |
|      | 0: Off                              |  |  |
|      | 1: On                               |  |  |
| 3    | Not used                            | Do not change these settings.                                      |  |
| 4    | File retention time                 | 1: A file that had a communication error will not be erased unless |  |
|      | 0: Depends on User                  | the communication is successful.                                   |  |
|      | Parameter 24 [18(H)]                |  |  |
|      | 1: No limit                         |  |  |
| 5-   | -                                   | Do not change this setting   |  |
| 7    |                                     |  |  |

# System Switch 03 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

### System Switch 04 (SP No. 1-101-005)

| No | Function                  | Comments  |
|----|---------------------------|---|
| 0- | Not used                  | Do not change these settings.                                   |
| 2  |                           |   |
| 3  | Printing dedicated TX     | 1: Each Quick/Speed dial number on the list is printed with the |
|    | parameters on Quick/Speed | dedicated TX parameters (10 bytes each).                        |
|    | Dial Lists                | The first 10 bytes of data are the programmed dedicated TX      |
|    | 0: Disabled               | parameters; 34 bytes of data are printed (the other 24 bytes    |
|    | 1: Enabled                | have no use for service technicians).                           |
| 4- | Not used                  | Do not change these settings.                                   |
| 7  |                           |   |

| System Switch 05 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |
|---|
| System Switch 06 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |
| System Switch 07 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |
| System Switch 08 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |

| Sys | System Switch 09 (SP No. 1-101-010) |   |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| No  | Function                            | Comments  |  |
| 0   | Addition of image data from         | If this feature is enabled, the top half of the first page of |  |
|     | confidential transmissions on the   | confidential messages will be printed on transmission         |  |
|     | transmission result report          | result reports.   |  |
|     | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled              |   |  |
| 1   | Print timing of communication       | 0: The Journal is printed only when image data is sent.       |  |
|     | reports on the Journal when no      | 1: The Journal is printed when any data is sent.              |  |
|     | image data was exchanged.           |   |  |
|     | 0: After DCS/NSS communication      |   |  |
|     | (default),                          |   |  |
|     | 1: After polling                    |   |  |
| 2   | Automatic error report printout     | 0: Error reports will not be printed.                         |  |
|     | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled              | 1: Error reports will be printed automatically after failed   |  |
|     |                                     | communications.   |  |
| 3   | Printing of the error code on the   | 1: Error codes are printed on the error reports.              |  |
|     | error report                        | This can be used for detecting an error which occurs          |  |
|     | 0: No 1: Yes                        | rarely.   |  |
| 4   | Not used                            | Do not change this setting.                                   |  |
| 5   | Power failure report                | 1: A power failure report will be automatically printed       |  |
|     | 0: Disabled                         | after the power is turned ON if a fax message                 |  |
|     | 1: Enabled (default)                | disappeared from the memory when the power was                |  |

|   |                                      | turned off last.  |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|
|   |                                      | NOTE: If "0" is selected, no reports are printed and no |
|   |                                      | one may recognize that fax data is gone due to a power  |
|   |                                      | failure.  |
| 6 | Conditions for printing the protocol | This switch becomes effective only when system switch   |
|   | dump list                            | 00 bit 6 is set to 1.                                   |
|   | 0: Print for all communications      | 1: Set this bit to 1 when you wish to print a protocol  |
|   | 1: Print only when there is a        | dump list only for communications with errors.          |
|   | communication error                  | NOTE: The memory size is limited. Use this bit switch   |
|   |                                      | only when some log reports are necessary.               |
| 7 | Not used                             | Do not change this setting.                             |

| Sys | System Switch 0A (SP No. 1-101-011) |  |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| No  | Function                            | Comments   |  |
| 0   | Automatic port selection            | When "1" is selected, a suitable port is automatically selected if the |  |
|     | 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled             | selected port is not used.   |  |
|     |                                     | NOTE: This bit is useful if all communication lines at a customer site |  |
|     |                                     | are not the same quality   |  |
| 1-  | Not used                            | Do not change these settings.  |  |
| 3   |                                     |  |  |
| 4   | Dialing on the ten-key              | 0: Prevents dialing from the ten-key pad while the external            |  |
|     | pad when the external               | telephone is off-hook. Use this setting when the external telephone    |  |
|     | telephone is off-hook               | is not by the machine, or if a wireless telephone is connected as an   |  |
|     | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled              | external telephone.  |  |
|     |                                     | 1: The user can dial on the machine's ten-key pad when the handset     |  |
|     |                                     | is off-hook.   |  |
| 5   | On hook dial                        | 0: On hook dial is disabled.   |  |
|     | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled              |  |  |
| 6-  | Not used                            | Do not change these settings   |  |
| 7   |                                     |  |  |

| System Switch 0B - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |  |
|---|--|
| System Switch 0C - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |  |
| System Switch 0D - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.) |  |

| System Switch 0E (SP No. 1-101-015) |                   |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| No                                  | Function Comments |                             |
| 0-                                  | Not used          | Do not change the settings. |

| 1  |                           |   |
|----|---------------------------|---|
| 2  | Enable/disable for direct | Direct sending cannot operate when the capture function is on       |
|    | sending selection         | during sending. Setting this switch to "1" enables direct sending   |
|    | 0: Direct sending off     | without capture.  |
|    | 1: Direct sending on      | Setting this switch to "0" masks the direct sending function on the |
|    |                           | operation panel so direct sending with ScanRouter cannot be         |
|    |                           | selected.   |
| 3  | Action when the external  | 0: Manual TX is possible while the external handset is off-hook.    |
|    | handset goes off-hook     | However, manual TX during handset off-hook may not be sent to       |
|    | 0: Manual TX and RX       | a correct direction. Manual TX is not possible.                     |
|    | operation                 | 1: The display stays in standby mode even when the external         |
|    | 1: Memory TX and RX       | handset is used, so that other people can use the machine for       |
|    | operation (the display    | memory TX operation. Note that manual TX and RX are not             |
|    | remains the same)         | possible with this setting.   |
| 4- | Not used                  | Do not change these settings.                                       |
| 7  |                           |   |

| Sys | System Switch 0F (SP No. 1-101-016) |               |   |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---------------|---|--|
| No  | Function                            |               | Comments  |  |
| 0   | Country/area                        | code for      | This country/area code determines the factory settings of bit |  |
| to  | functional set                      | ttings (Hex)  | switches and RAM addresses. However, it has no effect on the  |  |
| 7   | 00: France                          | 12: Asia      | NCU parameter settings and communication parameter RAM        |  |
|     | 01:                                 | 13: Japan     | addresses.  |  |
|     | Germany                             |               | Cross reference   |  |
|     | 02: UK                              | 14: Hong      | NCU country code:   |  |
|     |                                     | Kong          | SP No. 2-103-001 for G3-1                                     |  |
|     | 03: Italy                           | 15: South     | SP No. 2-104-001 for G3-2                                     |  |
|     |                                     | Africa        | SP No. 2-105-001 for G3-3                                     |  |
|     | 04: Austria                         | 16: Australia |   |  |
|     | 05: Belgium                         | 17: New       |   |  |
|     |                                     | Zealand       |   |  |
|     | 06:                                 | 18: Singapore |   |  |
|     | Denmark                             |               |   |  |
|     | 07: Finland                         | 19: Malaysia  |   |  |
|     | 08: Ireland                         | 1A: China     |   |  |
|     | 09: Norway                          | 1B: Taiwan    |   |  |
|     | 0A:                                 | 1C: Korea     |   |  |
|     | Sweden                              |               |   |  |

| 0B: Switz.  | 1D: Brazil  |
|-------------|-------------|
| 0C:         | 20: Turkey  |
| Portugal    |             |
| 0D: Holland | 21: Greece  |
| 0E: Spain   | 22: Hungary |
| 0F: Israel  | 23: Czech   |
| 10:         | 24: Poland  |
| 11: USA     |             |

| Syst | System Switch 10 (SP No. 1-101-017)                     |                                 |  |  |
|------|---|---------------------------------|--|--|
| No   | Function  | Comments                        |  |  |
| 0-7  | Threshold memory level for parallel memory transmission | Threshold = N x 128 KB + 256 KB |  |  |
|      |   | N can be between 00 - FF(H)     |  |  |
|      |   | Default setting: 02(H) = 512 KB |  |  |

| Sys | System Switch 11 (SP No. 1-101-018) |   |  |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| No  | Function                            | Comments  |  |  |
| 0   | TTI printing position               | Change this bit to 1 if the TTI overprints information that the |  |  |
|     | 0: Superimposed on the page         | customer considers to be important (G3 transmissions).          |  |  |
|     | data                                | NOTE: If "1" is selected, it is possible that sent data is      |  |  |
|     | 1: Printed before the data          | printed on two sheets of paper.                                 |  |  |
|     | leading edge                        |   |  |  |
| 1-  | Not used                            | Do not change these settings.                                   |  |  |
| 2   |                                     |   |  |  |
| 3   | TTI used for broadcasting           | 1: The TTI (TTI_1 or TTI_2) which is selected for all           |  |  |
|     | 0: The TTIs selected for each       | destinations during broadcasting.                               |  |  |
|     | Quick/Speed dial are used           |   |  |  |
|     | 1: The same TTI is used for all     |   |  |  |
|     | destinations                        |   |  |  |
| 4-  | Not used                            | Do not change these settings.                                   |  |  |
| 7   |                                     |   |  |  |

| Sys | System Switch 12 (SP No. 1-101-019) |   |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| No  | Function Comments                   |   |  |
| 0-  | TTI printing                        | TTI: 08 to 92 (BCD) mm  |  |
| 7   | position in the                     | Input even numbers only.  |  |
|     | main scan                           | This setting determines the print start position for the TTI from the left edge   |  |
|     | direction                           | of the paper. If the TTI is moved too far to the right, it may overwrite the file |  |

|  | number which is on the top right of the page. On an A4 page, if the TTI is |
|--|--|
|  | moved over by more than 50 mm, it may overwrite the page number.           |

System Switch 13 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 14 - Not used (do not change these settings)

| Sys | System Switch 15 (SP No. 1-101-022) |            |                   |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|------------|-------------------|--|
| No  | Function                            |            |                   | Comments   |
| 0   | Not used                            |            |                   | Do not change the settings.                                  |
| 1   | Going int                           | o the Ene  | gy Saver mode     | 1: The machine will restart from the Energy Saver mode       |
|     | automatio                           | cally      |                   | quickly, because the +5V power supply is active even in      |
|     | 0: Enable                           | ed         |                   | the Energy Saver mode. The LED of the operation switch       |
|     | 1: Disable                          | ed         |                   | is flashing instead of entering Energy Saver mode.           |
|     |                                     |            |                   | Use this setting if an external telephone has to be used     |
|     |                                     |            |                   | when the machine is in the Energy Saver mode.                |
| 2-  | Not used                            |            |                   | Do not change these settings.                                |
| 3   |                                     |            |                   |  |
| 4-  | Interval for preventing the machine |            | ng the machine    | If there is a file waiting for transmission, the machine     |
| 5   | from ente                           | ering Ener | gy Saver mode if  | does not go to Energy Saver mode during the selected         |
|     | there is a                          | pending t  | ransmission file. | period.  |
|     | Bit 5                               | Bit 4      | Setting           | After transmitting the file, if there is no file waiting for |
|     | 0                                   | 0          | 1 min             | transmission, the machine goes to the Energy Saver           |
|     | 0                                   | 1          | 30 min            | mode.  |
|     | 1                                   | 0          | 1 hour            |  |
|     | 1                                   | 1          | 24 hours          |  |
| 6-  | Not used                            |            |                   | Do not change  |
| 7   |                                     |            |                   |  |

| Sys | System Switch 16 (SP No. 1-101-023) |   |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| No  | Function                            | Comments  |  |
| 0   | Parallel Broadcasting               | 1: The machine sends messages simultaneously using all available        |  |
|     | 0: Disabled                         | ports during broadcasting.  |  |
|     | 1: Enabled                          | NOTE: If a customer wants to keep a line available for fax reception or |  |
|     |                                     | other reasons, select "0" (Disable).                                    |  |
| 1   | Priority setting for the            | This function allows the user to select the default G3 line type. The   |  |
|     | G3 line.                            | optional SG3 units are required to use the PSTN-2 or 3 setting.         |  |
|     | 0: PSTN-1 > PSTN-2                  |   |  |
|     | or 3                                |   |  |

|    | 1: PSTN-2 or 3 > |                               |
|----|------------------|-------------------------------|
|    | PSTN-1           |                               |
| 2- | Not used         | Do not change these settings. |
| 7  |                  |                               |

System Switch 17 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 18 - Not used (do not change these settings)

| Sys | System Switch 19 (SP No. 1-101-026) |  |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| No  | Function Comments                   |  |  |
| 0-  | Not used                            | Do not change the settings.  |  |
| 5   |                                     |  |  |
| 6   | Extended scanner                    | 0: After installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page        |  |
|     | page memory after                   | memory is extended to 4 MB from 2 MB.                                    |  |
|     | memory option is                    | 1: If this bit is set to 1 after installing the memory expansion option, |  |
|     | installed                           | the scanner page memory is extended to 12 MB. But the SAF                |  |
|     | 0: Disabled                         | memory decreases to 18 MB.   |  |
|     | 1: Enabled                          |  |  |
| 7*  | Special Original mode               | 1: If the customer frequently wishes to transmit a form or letterhead    |  |
|     | 0: Disabled                         | which has a colored or printed background, change this bit to "1".       |  |
|     | 1: Enabled                          | "Original 1" and "Original 2" can be selected in addition to the "Text", |  |
|     |                                     | "Text/Photo" and "Photo" modes.  |  |

<sup>\*</sup> This setting can be used for the client machine which has no FCU.

| Sys | System Switch 1A (SP No. 1-101-027) |   |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| No  | Function                            | Comments  |  |
| 0   | LS RX memory                        | Sets the value to x4KB. When the amount of available memory drops |  |
| to  | capacity threshold                  | below this setting, RX documents are printed to conserve memory.  |  |
| 7   | setting                             | Initial setting 0x80 (512 KB)                                     |  |
|     | 00-FF (0-1020 Kbyte:                | <b>♦</b> Note   |  |
|     | Hex)                                | If a customer wants available memory size to be larger,           |  |
|     |                                     | decrease this threshold.  |  |

System Switch 1B - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 1C - Not used (do not change these settings)

| Sys | System Switch 1D (SP No. 1-101-030) |   |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| No  | Function                            | unction Comments  |  |
| 0   | RTI/CSI/CPS code                    | 0: RTI, CSI, CPS codes are displayed on the top line of the LCD panel |  |

|    | display    | during communication.                  |
|----|------------|--|
|    | 0: Enable  | 1: Codes are switched off (no display) |
|    | 1: Disable |  |
| 1- | Not used   | Do not change these settings.          |
| 7  |            |  |

| Sys | System Switch 1E (SP No. 1-101-031) |  |  |  |  |
|-----|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| No  | Function                            | Comments   |  |  |  |
| 0   | Communication after the             | 0: When this switch is on and the journal history becomes full,    |  |  |  |
|     | Journal data storage area has       | the next report prints. If the journal history is not deleted, the |  |  |  |
|     | become full                         | next transmission cannot be received. This prevents                |  |  |  |
|     | 0: Impossible                       | overwriting communication records before the machine can           |  |  |  |
|     | 1: Possible                         | print them.  |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | 1: If the buffer memory of the communication records for the       |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | Journal is full, fax communications are still possible. But the    |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | machine will overwrite the oldest communication records.           |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | <b> ♦</b> Note   |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal              |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the               |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | report (e.g., no paper).   |  |  |  |
| 1*  | Action when the SAF memory          | 0: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning for a            |  |  |  |
|     | has become full during              | memory transmission, the successfully scanned pages are            |  |  |  |
|     | scanning                            | transmitted.   |  |  |  |
|     | 0: The current page is erased.      | 1: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning for a            |  |  |  |
|     | 1: The entire file is erased.       | memory transmission, the file is erased and no pages are           |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | transmitted.   |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | <b>♦</b> Note  |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal              |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the               |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | report (e.g., no paper).   |  |  |  |
| 2   | RTI/CSI display priority            | This bit determines which identifier, RTI or CSI, is displayed on  |  |  |  |
|     | 0: RTI 1: CSI                       | the LCD while the machine is communicating in G3 non-              |  |  |  |
|     |                                     | standard mode.   |  |  |  |
| 3   | File No. printing                   | 1: File numbers are not printed on any reports.                    |  |  |  |
|     | 0: Enabled                          | NOTE: The file numbers may not be printed in the sequential        |  |  |  |
|     | 1: Disabled                         | order. If a customer does not like this numbering, select "0".     |  |  |  |
| 4   | Action when authorized              | 0: If the user has stored no acceptable sender RTIs or CSIs,       |  |  |  |
|     | reception is enabled but            | the user can select "ON" in the authorized reception setting       |  |  |  |
|     | authorized RTIs/CSIs are not        | but the setting becomes invalid ("OFF"). The machine will not      |  |  |  |

|    | yet programmed                   | be able to receive any fax messages.                          |
|----|----------------------------------|---|
|    | 0: All fax reception is disabled | If the customer wishes to receive messages from any sender    |
|    | 1: Faxes can be received if the  | that includes an RTI or CSI, and to block messages from       |
|    | sender has an RTI or CSI         | senders that do not include an RTI or CSI, change this bit to |
|    |                                  | "0", then enable Authorized Reception.                        |
|    |                                  | Otherwise, keep this bit at "1 (default setting)".            |
| 5- | Not used                         | Do not change the settings                                    |
| 7  |                                  |   |

<sup>\*</sup> This setting can be used for the client machine which has no FCU.

| Sys | System Switch 1F (SP No. 1-101-032)   |   |  |  |
|-----|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| No  | Function                              | Comments  |  |  |
| 0   | Not used                              | Do not change the settings.                             |  |  |
| 1   | Report printout after an original jam | 0: When an original jams, or the SAF memory             |  |  |
|     | during SAF storage or if the SAF      | overflows during scanning, a report will be printed.    |  |  |
|     | memory fills up                       | Change this bit to "1" if the customer does not want to |  |  |
|     | 0: Enabled                            | have a report in these cases.                           |  |  |
|     | 1: Disabled                           | Memory TX – Memory storage report                       |  |  |
|     |                                       | Parallel memory TX – Transmission result report         |  |  |
| 2   | Not used                              | Do not change the settings.                             |  |  |
| 3   | Received fax print start timing       | 0: The machine prints each page immediately after the   |  |  |
|     | (G3 reception)                        | machine receives it.                                    |  |  |
|     | 0: After receiving each page          | 1: The machine prints the complete message after the    |  |  |
|     | 1: After receiving all pages          | machine receives all the pages in the memory.           |  |  |
| 4-  | Not used                              | Do not change the factory settings.                     |  |  |
| 6   |                                       |   |  |  |
| 7   | Action when a fax SC has occurred     | 0: When the fax unit detects a fax SC code other than   |  |  |
|     | 0: Automatic reset                    | SC1201 and SC1207, the fax unit automatically resets    |  |  |
|     | 1: Fax unit stops                     | itself.   |  |  |
|     |                                       | 1: When the fax unit detects any fax SC code, the fax   |  |  |
|     |                                       | unit stops.   |  |  |
|     |                                       | Reference:  |  |  |
|     |                                       | For fax SC codes, see "Troubleshooting".                |  |  |

### Bit Switches - 2



• Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

#### I-Fax Switches

| I-fax           | I-fax Switch 00 (SP No. 1-102-001) |   |  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|---|--|
| No              | Function                           | Comments  |  |
| Origin          | nal Width of TX                    | This setting sets the maximum size of the original that the destination |  |
| Attachment File |                                    | can receive. (Bits 3 to 6 are reserved for future use or not used.)     |  |
| 0               | A4                                 | -   |  |
| 1               | B4                                 |   |  |
| 2               | A3                                 |   |  |
| 3-6             | Reserved                           |   |  |
| 7               | Not used                           |   |  |

0: Off (not selected), 1: On (selected)

If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the larger size has priority. For example, if both Bit 2 and Bit 1 are set to "1" then the maximum size is "A3" (Bit 2).

When mail is sent, there is no negotiation with the receiving machine at the destination, so the sending machine cannot make a selection for the receiving capabilities (original width setting) of the receiving machine. The original width selected with this switch is used as the RX machine's original width setting, and the original is reduced to this size before sending. The default is A4.

If the width selected with this switch is higher than the receiving machine can accept, the machine detects this and this causes an error.

| I-fax                    | I-fax Switch 01 (SP No. 1-102-002) |  |  |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|--|--|
| No                       | Function                           | Comments   |  |
| Original Line Resolution |                                    | These settings set the maximum resolution of the original that the         |  |
| of TX Attachment File    |                                    | destination can receive.   |  |
| 0                        | 200x100 Standard                   | 0: Not selected  |  |
| 1                        | 200x200 Detail                     | 1: Selected  |  |
| 2                        | 200x400 Fine                       | If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the higher resolution  |  |
| 3                        | 300 x 300 Reserve                  | has priority. For example, if both Bit 0 and Bit 2 are set to "1" Then The |  |
| 4                        | 400 x 400 Super                    | Resolution is set for "Bit 2 200 x 400.                                    |  |

|   | Fine              |
|---|-------------------|
| 5 | 600 x 600 Reserve |
| 6 | Reserve           |
| 7 | mm/inch           |

This setting selects mm/inch conversion for mail transmission.

0: Off (No conversion), 1: On (Conversion)

When on (set to "1"), the machine converts millimeters to inches for sending mail. There is no switch for converting inches to millimeters.

Unlike G3 fax transmissions which can negotiate between sender and receiver to determine the setting, mail cannot negotiate between terminals; the mm/inch selection is determined by the sender fax.

When this switch is Off (0):

- Images scanned in inches are sent in inches.
- Images scanned in mm are sent in mm.
- Images received in inches are transmitted in inches.
- Images received in mm are transmitted in mm.

When this switch is On (1):

- Images scanned in inches are sent in inches.
- Images scanned in mm are converted to inches.
- Images received in inches are transmitted in inches.
- Images received in mm are converted to inches.

| I-fax Switch 02 (SP No. 1-102-003)   |  |  |   |
|--|--|--|---|
| No   | Function   | Comments   |   |
| 0  | RX Text Mail Header Processing   |  |   |
|  | This setting determines whether the header   | information is printed with text e-mails when they   |   |
|  | are received.  |  |   |
|  | 0: Prints only text mail.  |  |   |
| 1: Prints mail header information attached to text mail.   |  |  |   |
|  | n On (1), the "From" address and "Subject" address   |  |   |
|  |  |  |   |
| When a mail with only binary data is received (a TIFF-F file, for example), this setting i and no header is printed. |  |  |   |
|  |  |  | 1 |
|  | This setting determines whether only the first page or all pages of an e-mail attachment are |  |   |
| printed at the sending station when a transmission error occurs. This allows the custo                               |  |  |   |
| see which documents have not reached their intended destinations if sent t   |  | ir intended destinations if sent to the wrong e-mail |   |
|  | addresses, for example.  |  |   |
|  | 0: Prints 1st page only.   |  |   |

# 1: Prints all pages. 2-3 Text String for Return Receipt This setting determines the text string output for the Return Receipt that confirms the transmission was received normally at the destination. 00: "Dispatched" Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "dispatched" in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; dispatched The "dispatched" string is included in the Subject string. 01: "Displayed" Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "displayed" in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; displayed The "displayed" string is included in the Subject string. 10: Reserved 11: Reserved A mail requesting a Return Receipt sent from an IFAX with this switch set to "00" (for "dispatched") received by Microsoft Outlook 2000 may cause an error. If any setting other than "displayed" (01) causes a problem, change the setting to "01" to enable normal sending of the Return Receipt. 4 Media accept feature This setting adds or does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail to confirm a reception. 0: Does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail 1: Adds the media accept feature to the answer mail. Use this bit switch if a problem occurs when the machine receives an answer mail, which contains the media accept feature field. 5-6 Not Used 7 Image Resolution of RX Text Mail This setting determines the image resolution of the received mail. 0: 200 x 200 1: 400 x 400 The "1" setting requires installation of the Memory Unit in order to have enough SAF (Store and Forward) memory to receive images at 400 x 400 resolution.

#### I-fax Switch 03 - Not used (do not change these settings)

#### I-fax Switch 04 (SP No. 1-102-005)

| No  | Function   | Comments  |  |
|-----|--|---|--|
| 0   | Subject for Delivery TX/Memory Transfer  |   |  |
|     | This setting determines whether the RTI/CSI registered on this machine or the RTI/CSI of the     |   |  |
|     | originator is used in the subject lines of tran  | sferred documents.                                      |  |
|     | 0: Puts the RTI/CSI of the originator in the S   | Subject line. If this is used, either the RTI or CSI is |  |
|     | used. Only one of these can be received for  | use in the subject line.                                |  |
|     | 1: Puts the RTI/CSI registered on this mach  | ine in the Subject line.                                |  |
|     | When this switch is used to transfer and del   | iver mail to a PC, the information in the Subject line  |  |
|     | that indicates where the transmission original   | ated can be used to determine automatically the         |  |
|     | destination folder for each e-mail.  |   |  |
| 1   | Subject corresponding to mail post database  |   |  |
|     | 0: Standard subject  |   |  |
|     | 1: Mail post database subject  |   |  |
|     | The standard subject is replaced by the mail post database subject in the following three cases: |   |  |
|     | 1) When the service technician sets the service (software) switch.                               |   |  |
|     | 2) When memory sending or delivery specif  | ied by F code is applied by the SMTP server             |  |
|     | 3) With relay broadcasting (1st stage withou   | t the Schmidt 4 function).                              |  |
|     | €Note  |   |  |
|     | This switch does not apply for cond  | dition 3) when the RX system is set up for memory       |  |
|     | sending, delivery by F-code, sendi   | ng with SMTP RX and when operators are using            |  |
|     | FOL (to prevent problems when re   | ceiving transmissions).                                 |  |
| 2-7 | Not Used   |   |  |

| I-fax Switch 05 (SP No. 1-102-006) |   |          |  |
|------------------------------------|---|----------|--|
| No                                 | Function  | Comments |  |
| 0                                  | Mail Addresses of SMTP Broadcast Recipients   |          |  |
|                                    | Determines whether the e-mail addresses of the destinations that receive transmissions        |          |  |
|                                    | broadcasted using SMTP protocol are recorded in the Journal.                                  |          |  |
|                                    | For example:  |          |  |
|                                    | "1st destination + Total number of destinations: 9" in the Journal indicates a broadcast to 9 |          |  |
|                                    | destinations.   |          |  |
|                                    | 0: Not recorded   |          |  |
|                                    | 1: Recorded   |          |  |
| 1 IFAXTX Retries                   |   |          |  |
|                                    | Determines whether the machine retries sending IFAX when connection and transmission fails    |          |  |
|                                    | due to errors.  |          |  |
|                                    | 0: Disabled   |          |  |
|                                    | 1: Enabled  |          |  |
| 2-7                                | Not Used  |          |  |

I-fax Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)

I-fax Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)

| I-fax | I-fax Switch 08 (SP No. 1-102-009)   |  |  |
|-------|--|--|--|
| No    | Function   | Comments   |  |
| 0-7   | Memory Threshold for POP Mail Reception  |  |  |
|       | This setting determines the amount of SAF (Store and Forward) memory. (SAF stores fax          |  |  |
|       | messages to send later for transmission to more than one location, and also holds incoming     |  |  |
|       | messages if they cannot be printed.) When the amount of SAF memory available falls below       |  |  |
|       | this setting, mail can no longer be received; received mail is then stored on the mail server. |  |  |
|       | 00-FF (0 to 1024 KB: HEX)  |  |  |
|       | The hexadecimal number you enter is multip   | olied by 4 KB to determine the amount of memory. |  |

| I-fax | I-fax Switch 09 (SP No. 1-102-010) |   |  |
|-------|------------------------------------|---|--|
| No    | Function                           | Comments  |  |
| 0-    | Not used                           | Do not change the settings  |  |
| 3     |                                    |   |  |
| 4-    | Restrict TX                        | This setting determines the number of retries when connection and |  |
| 7     | Retries                            | transmission fails due to errors.                                 |  |
|       |                                    | 01-F (1-15 Hex)   |  |

| I-fax Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| I-fax Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |
| I-fax Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |

| I-fax | I-fax Switch 0D (SP No. 1-102-014)      |                     |                    |                   |  |
|-------|---|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|--|
| No    | Function                                |                     |                    | Comments          |  |
| 0-    | Not used                                |                     |                    | Do not change the |  |
| 1     |   |                     |                    | settings          |  |
| 2-    | Select the sig                          | In response to      |                    |                   |  |
| 3     | results                                 |                     |                    | IEEE2600.1.       |  |
|       | Bit 2                                   | Bit 2 Bit 3 Setting |                    |                   |  |
|       | 0                                       | 0 No sign           |                    |                   |  |
|       | 0                                       | 1                   | No setting         |                   |  |
|       | 1 0 Individual setting                  |                     | Individual setting |                   |  |
|       | 1                                       | 1                   | Always sign        |                   |  |
| 4-    | Select the signature when sending mail. |                     |                    | In response to    |  |

| 5  |          |       |                    | IEEE2600.1. |
|----|----------|-------|--------------------|-------------|
|    | Bit 5    | Bit 4 | Setting            |             |
|    | 0        | 0     | No sign            |             |
|    | 0        | 1     | No setting         |             |
|    | 1        | 0     | Individual setting |             |
|    | 1        | 1     | Always sign        |             |
| 6- | Not used |       | Do not change the  |             |
| 7  |          |       |                    | settings.   |

### I-fax Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)

| I-fax | I-fax Switch 0F (SP No. 1-102-016)                    |   |  |  |
|-------|---|---|--|--|
| No    | Function  | Comments                                      |  |  |
| 0     | Delivery Method for SMTP RX Files                     |   |  |  |
|       | This setting determines whether files receiv          | ed with SMTP protocol are delivered or output |  |  |
|       | immediately.  |   |  |  |
|       | 0: Off. Files received via SMTP are output i          | mmediately without delivery.                  |  |  |
|       | 1: On. Files received via SMTP are delivere           | d immediately to their destinations.          |  |  |
| 1     | Set to select the signature when receiving SMTP mail. |   |  |  |
|       | 0: No sign  |   |  |  |
|       | 1: Always sign  |   |  |  |
| 2     | Set to encrypt the data when receiving SMTP mail.     |   |  |  |
|       | 0: No encryption                                      |   |  |  |
|       | 1: Encryption   |   |  |  |
| 3-7   | Not used  |   |  |  |

### Printer Switches

| Prin | Printer Switch 00 (SP No. 1-103-001) |  |  |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| No   | Function                             | Comments   |  |
| 0    | Select page separation               | 0: If a 2 page RX transmission is split, [*] is printed in the bottom  |  |
|      | marks                                | right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper    |  |
|      | 0: Off                               | right corner of the 2nd page.  |  |
|      | 1: On                                | 1: If a 2 page RX transmission is split into two pages, for example,   |  |
|      |                                      | [*] [2] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only |  |
|      |                                      | a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page.            |  |
|      |                                      | Note   |  |
|      |                                      | This helps the user to identify pages that have been split             |  |
|      |                                      | because the size of the paper is smaller than the size of              |  |

|    |                          | the document received. (When A5 is used to print an A4            |
|----|--------------------------|---|
|    |                          | size document, for example.)                                      |
| 1  | Repetition of data when  | 1: Default. 10 mm of the trailing edge of the previous page are   |
|    | the received page is     | repeated at the top of the next page.                             |
|    | longer than the printer  | 0: The next page continues from where the previous page stopped   |
|    | paper                    | without any repeated text.  |
|    | 0: Off                   |   |
|    | 1: On                    |   |
| 2  | Prints the date and time | This switch is only effective when user parameter 02 - bit 2      |
|    | on received fax messages | (printing the received date and time on received fax messages) is |
|    | 0: Disabled              | enabled.  |
|    | 1: Enabled               | 1: The machine prints the received and printed date and time at   |
|    |                          | the bottom of each received page.                                 |
| 3- | Not used                 | Do not change the settings.                                       |
| 7  |                          |   |

| Prin | iter Switc | h 01 (SP   | No. 1-103-002)      |  |
|------|------------|------------|---------------------|--|
| No   | Function   |            |                     | Comments   |
| 0-   | Not use    | d          |                     | Do not change the settings.                                |
| 2    |            |            |                     |  |
| 3-   | Maximu     | m print wi | dth used in the     | These bits are only effective when bit 7 of printer switch |
| 4    | setup pr   | otocol     |                     | 01 is "1".   |
|      | Bit 4      | Bit 3      | Setting             |  |
|      | 0          | 0          | Not used            |  |
|      | 0          | 1          | A3                  |  |
|      | 1          | 0          | B4                  |  |
|      | 1          | 1          | A4                  |  |
| 5-   | Not use    | d          | •                   | Do not change the settings.                                |
| 6    |            |            |                     |  |
| 7    | Receive    | d messag   | e width restriction | 0: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the     |
|      | in the pr  | otocol sig | nal to the sender   | print width depending on the paper size available from     |
|      | 0: Disab   | led        |                     | the paper feed stations.                                   |
|      | 1: Enabl   | ed         |                     | Refer to the table on the next page for how the machine    |
|      |            |            |                     | chooses the paper width used in the setup protocol         |
|      |            |            |                     | (NSF/DIS).   |
|      |            |            |                     | 1: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the     |
|      |            |            |                     | fixed paper width which is specified by bits 3 and 4       |
|      |            |            |                     | above.   |

| Available Paper Size           | Printer width used in the Protocol (NSF/DIS) |
|--------------------------------|--|
| A4 or 8.5" x 11"               | 297 mm width                                 |
| B5                             | 256 mm width                                 |
| A5 or 8.5" x 5.5"              | 216 mm width                                 |
| No paper available (Paper end) | 216 mm width                                 |

| Prin | Printer Switch 02 (SP No. 1-103-003) |   |  |  |
|------|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| No   | Function                             | Comments  |  |  |
| 0*   | 1st paper feed                       | 0: The paper feed station can be used to print fax messages and       |  |  |
|      | station usage for fax                | reports.  |  |  |
|      | printing                             | 1: The specified paper feed station will not be used for printing fax |  |  |
|      | 0: Enabled                           | messages and reports.   |  |  |
|      | 1: Disabled                          | <b>♦</b> Note   |  |  |
| 1*   | 2nd paper feed                       | Do not disable usage for a paper feed station which has been          |  |  |
|      | station usage for fax                | specified by User Parameter Switch 0F (15), or which is used          |  |  |
|      | printing                             | for the Specified Cassette Selection feature.                         |  |  |
|      | 0: Enabled                           |   |  |  |
|      | 1: Disabled                          |   |  |  |
| 2*   | 3rd paper feed                       |   |  |  |
|      | station usage for fax                |   |  |  |
|      | printing                             |   |  |  |
|      | 0: Enabled                           |   |  |  |
|      | 1: Disabled                          |   |  |  |
| 3*   | 4th paper feed                       |   |  |  |
|      | station usage for fax                |   |  |  |
|      | printing                             |   |  |  |
|      | 0: Enabled                           |   |  |  |
|      | 1: Disabled                          |   |  |  |
| 4*   | LCT usage for fax                    |   |  |  |
|      | printing                             |   |  |  |
|      | 0: Enabled                           |   |  |  |
|      | 1: Disabled                          |   |  |  |
| 5-   | Not used                             | Do not change the settings.   |  |  |
| 7    |                                      |   |  |  |

<sup>\*</sup> This setting can be used for the client machine which has no FCU.

| Printer Switch 03 (SP No. 1-103-004) |                                   |   |  |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| No                                   | Function Comments                 |   |  |
| 0*                                   | Length reduction of received data | 0: Incoming pages are printed without length reduction. |  |

|    | 0: Disabled                      | (Page separation threshold: Printer Switch 03, bits 4 to   |
|----|----------------------------------|--|
|    | 1: Enabled                       | 7)   |
|    |                                  | 1: Incoming page length is reduced when printing.          |
|    |                                  | (Maximum reducible length: Printer Switches 04, bits 0     |
|    |                                  | to 4)  |
| 1- | Not used                         | Do not change the settings                                 |
| 3  |                                  |  |
| 4  | Page separation setting when sub | Page separation threshold (with reduction disabled with    |
| to | scan compression is forbidden    | switch 03-0 above).  |
| 7  | 00-0F (0-15 mm: Hex)             | For example, if this setting is set to "10", and A4 is the |
|    | Default: 6 mm                    | selected paper size:                                       |
|    |                                  | If the received document is 10 mm or less longer than      |
|    |                                  | A4, then the 10 mm are cut and only 1 page prints.         |
|    |                                  | If the received document is 10 mm longer than A4, then     |
|    |                                  | the document is split into 2 pages.                        |

<sup>\*</sup> This setting can be used for the client machine which has no FCU.

|  | This setting sair be deed for the short maximic which has no 1 ee.                     |                    |      |          |                 |                  |             |
|--|--|--------------------|------|----------|-----------------|------------------|-------------|
| Prin   | ter Switch 04 (S   | SP No. 1-103-00    | 5)   |          |                 |                  |             |
| No   | Function   |                    |      | Com      | ments           |                  |             |
| 0  | Maximum reducible length when leng   |                    |      | ngth red | duction is ena  | bled with switch | 03-0 above. |
| to   | [Maximum reducible length] = [Paper length] + (N x 5mm)                                |                    |      |          |                 |                  |             |
| 4  | "N" is the decin   | nal value of the b | inar | y settin | ng of bits 0 to | 4.               |             |
|  | Bit 4  | Bit 3              | Bit  | 2 Bit    | t 1             | Bit 0            | Setting     |
|  | 0  | 0                  | 0    | 0        |                 | 0                | 0 mm        |
|  | 0  | 0                  | 0    | 0        |                 | 1                | 5 mm        |
|  | 0  | 0                  | 1    | 0        |                 | 0                | 20 mm       |
|  | 1  | 1                  | 1    | 1        |                 | 1                | 155 mm      |
|  | For A5 sideways and B5 sideways paper  |                    |      |          |                 |                  |             |
| [Maximum reducible length] = [Paper length] + 0.75 x (N x 5mm) |  |                    |      | l x 5mm) |                 |                  |             |
| 5  | Length of the duplicated image on the next page, when page separation has taken place. |                    |      |          |                 | has taken place. |             |
| 6  | Bit 6  |                    | Bit  | Bit 5    |                 | Setting          |             |
|  | 0  |                    |      | 0        |                 | 4 mm             |             |
|  | 0  |                    | 1    |          |                 | 10 mm            |             |
|  | 1  |                    | 0    |          |                 | 15 mm            |             |
|  | 1  |                    | 1    |          |                 | Not used         |             |
| 7  | Not used.  |                    | [    | Do not   | change the s    | etting.          |             |

# Printer Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)

| Prin | Printer Switch 06 (SP No. 1-103-007)                              |                             |  |  |  |
|------|---|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| No   | Function  | Comments                    |  |  |  |
| 0*   | Printing while a paper cassette is pulled out, when the Just Size | Reference:                  |  |  |  |
|      | Printing feature is enabled.                                      | Just size printing on/off – |  |  |  |
|      | 0: Printing will not start User switch 05,                        |                             |  |  |  |
|      | 1: Printing will start if another cassette has a suitable size of |                             |  |  |  |
|      | paper, based on the paper size selection priority tables.         |                             |  |  |  |
| 1-   | Not used.   | Do not change the settings. |  |  |  |
| 7    |   |                             |  |  |  |

<sup>\*</sup> This setting can be used for the client machine which has no FCU.

| Prin | Printer Switch 07 (SP No. 1-103-008)      |  |  |  |
|------|---|--|--|--|
| No   | Function                                  | Comments   |  |  |
| 0-   | Not used.                                 | Do not change the settings.                        |  |  |
| 3    |   |  |  |  |
| 4    | Receiver name printed on the transmission | Selects the printing target on the transmission    |  |  |
|      | result report                             | result report.                                     |  |  |
|      |   | 0: All receivers                                   |  |  |
|      |   | 1: Printing only receivers which have received fax |  |  |
|      |   | transmission.                                      |  |  |
| 5-   | Not used.                                 | Do not change the settings.                        |  |  |
| 7    |   |  |  |  |

| Printer Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
|---|
| Printer Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Printer Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Printer Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Printer Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings) |

| Prin | Printer Switch 0E (SP No. 1-103-015) |   |  |  |
|------|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| No   | Function                             | Comments  |  |  |
| 0*   | Paper size selection priority        | 0: A paper size that has the same width as the received data is |  |  |
|      | 0: Width                             | selected first.   |  |  |
|      | 1: Length                            | 1: A paper size which has enough length to print all the        |  |  |
|      |                                      | received lines without reduction is selected first.             |  |  |
| 1*   | Paper size selected for              | This switch determines which paper size is selected for         |  |  |
|      | printing A4 width fax data           | printing A4 width fax data, when the machine has both A4 and    |  |  |
|      | 0: 8.5" x 11" size                   | 8.5" x 11" size paper.  |  |  |
|      | 1: A4 size                           |   |  |  |

|    | ·                                       |         |                   |   |
|----|---|---------|-------------------|---|
| 2  | Page separation                         |         |                   | 1: If all paper sizes in the machine require page separation to |
|    | 0: Er                                   | nabled  |                   | print a received fax message, the machine does not print the    |
|    |   |         |                   | message (Substitute Reception is used).                         |
|    |   |         |                   | After a larger size of paper is set in a cassette, the machine  |
|    |   |         |                   | automatically prints the fax message.                           |
| 3- | Print                                   | ing the | e sample image on | "Same size" means the sample image is printed at 100%,          |
| 4  | repo                                    | rts     |                   | even if page separation occurs.                                 |
|    | Bit                                     | Bit     | Setting           | User Parameter Switch 19 (13H) bit 4 must be set to "0" to      |
|    | 4                                       | 3       |                   | enable this switch.   |
|    | 0                                       | 0       | The upper half    | Refer to "Detailed Descriptions" for more details.              |
|    | only                                    |         | only              |   |
|    | 0                                       | 1       | 50% reduction     |   |
|    | (sub-scan only)                         |         | (sub-scan only)   |   |
|    | 1                                       | 0       | Same size         |   |
|    | 1                                       | 1       | Not used          |   |
| 5- | Not u                                   | used    |                   | Do not change the settings.                                     |
| 6  |   |         |                   |   |
| 7  | Equalizing the reduction ratio          |         |                   | 0: When page separation has taken place, all the pages are      |
|    | among separated pages (Page Separation) |         |                   | reduced with the same reduction ratio.                          |
|    |   |         |                   | 1: Only the last page is reduced to fit the selected paper size |
|    | 0: Er                                   | nabled  |                   | when page separation has taken place. Other pages are           |
|    | 1: Di                                   | sable   | t                 | printed without reduction.                                      |
|    |   |         |                   |   |

<sup>\*</sup> This setting can be used for the client machine which has no FCU.

| Prin | rinter Switch 0F (SP No. 1-103-016) |         |          |   |  |  |
|------|-------------------------------------|---------|----------|---|--|--|
| No   | Function                            |         |          | Comments  |  |  |
| 0-   | Smoothing feature                   |         | ature    | (0, 0) (0, 1): Disable smoothing if the machine receives halftone |  |  |
| 1*   | Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting                 |         | Setting  | images from other manufacturers fax machines frequently.          |  |  |
|      | 0                                   | 0       | Disabled |   |  |  |
|      | 0                                   | 1       | Disabled |   |  |  |
|      | 1                                   | 0       | Enabled  |   |  |  |
|      | 1                                   | 1       | Not used |   |  |  |
| 2*   | Duplex printing                     |         | g        | 1: The machine always prints received fax messages in duplex      |  |  |
|      | 0: Disabled                         |         |          | printing mode:  |  |  |
|      | 1: Ena                              | bled    |          |   |  |  |
| 3    | Binding direction for               |         | ion for  | 0: Sets the binding for the left edge of the stack.               |  |  |
|      | Duplex printing                     |         | g        | 1: Sets the binding for the top of the stack.                     |  |  |
|      | 0: Left binding                     |         |          |   |  |  |
|      | 1: Top                              | binding | J        |   |  |  |

| 4-7 | Not used | Do not change the settings. |
|-----|----------|-----------------------------|

<sup>\*</sup> This setting can be used for the client machine which has no FCU.

### Bit Switches - 3



• Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

#### **Communication Switches**

| Con | nmuni                          | icatior | n Switch 00 (SP No. 1- | 104-001)   |
|-----|--------------------------------|---------|------------------------|--|
| No  | Fund                           | ction   |                        | Comments   |
| 0-  | Compression modes available in |         | on modes available in  | These bits determine the compression capabilities to be      |
| 1   | receive mode                   |         | de                     | declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.      |
|     | Bit                            | Bit     | Modes                  |  |
|     | 1                              | 0       |                        |  |
|     | 0                              | 0       | MH only                |  |
|     | 0                              | 1       | MH/MR                  |  |
|     | 1                              | 0       | MH/MR/MMR              |  |
|     | 1                              | 1       | MH/MR/MMR/JBIG         |  |
| 2-  | Com                            | pressi  | on modes available in  | These bits determine the compression capabilities to be      |
| 3   | trans                          | mit mo  | ode                    | used in the transmission and to be declared in phase B       |
|     | Bit                            | Bit     | Modes                  | (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.                          |
|     | 3                              | 2       |                        |  |
|     | 0                              | 0       | MH only                |  |
|     | 0                              | 1       | MH/MR                  |  |
|     | 1                              | 0       | MH/MR/MMR              |  |
|     | 1                              | 1       | MH/MR/MMR/JBIG         |  |
| 4   | Not u                          | used    |                        | Do not change the settings.                                  |
| 5   | JBIG                           | comp    | ression method:        | Change the setting when communication problems occur         |
|     | Rece                           | eption  |                        | using JBIG compression.                                      |
|     | 0: Oı                          | nly bas | sic supported          |  |
|     | 1: Ba                          | asic an | d optional both        |  |
|     | supp                           | orted   |                        |  |
| 6   | JBIG                           | comp    | ression method:        | Change the setting when communication problems occur         |
|     | Tran                           | smissi  | on                     | using JBIG compression.                                      |
|     | 0: Ba                          | asic mo | ode priority           |  |
|     | 1: O                           | otional | mode priority          |  |
| 7   | Clos                           | ed net  | work (reception)       | 1: Reception will not go ahead if the polling ID code of the |

| 0: Disabled | remote terminal does not match the polling ID code of the  |
|-------------|--|
| 1: Enabled  | local terminal. This function is only available in NSF/NSS |
|             | mode.  |

| Con | ommunication Switch 01 (SP No. 1-104-002) |          |             |   |  |  |
|-----|---|----------|-------------|---|--|--|
| No  | Func                                      | tion     |             | Comments  |  |  |
| 0   | ECM                                       |          |             | If this bit is set to 0, ECM is switched off for all communications.    |  |  |
|     | 0: Off 1: On                              |          |             | In addition, V.8 protocol and JBIG compression are switched off         |  |  |
|     |   |          |             | automatically.  |  |  |
| 1   | Not u                                     | sed      |             | Do not change the setting.  |  |  |
| 2-  | Wron                                      | ig conr  | ection      | (0,1): The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax       |  |  |
| 3   | preve                                     | ention r | method      | message, if the last 8 digits of the received CSI do not match the last |  |  |
|     | Bit                                       | Bit      | Setting     | 8 digits of the dialed telephone number. This does not work when        |  |  |
|     | 3   | 2        |             | manually dialed.  |  |  |
|     | 0   | 0        | None        | (1,0): The same as above, except that only the last 4 digits are        |  |  |
|     | 0   | 1        | 8 digit CSI | compared.   |  |  |
|     | 1   | 0        | 4 digit CSI | (1,1): The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax       |  |  |
|     | 1   | 1        | CSI/RTI     | message, if the other end does not identify itself with an RTI or CSI.  |  |  |
|     |   |          |             | (0,0): Nothing is checked; transmission will always go ahead.           |  |  |
|     |   |          |             | <b>♦</b> Note   |  |  |
|     |   |          |             | This function does not work when dialing is done from the               |  |  |
|     |   |          |             | external telephone.   |  |  |
| 4-  | Not used                                  |          |             | Do not change the setting.  |  |  |
| 5   |   |          |             |   |  |  |
| 6-  | Maxir                                     | mum p    | rintable    | The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting    |  |  |
| 7   | page                                      | length   | available   | terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF           |  |  |
|     | Bit                                       | Bit      | Setting     | frames).  |  |  |
|     | 7   | 6        |             |   |  |  |
|     | 0   | 0        | No limit    |   |  |  |
|     | 0   | 1        | B4 (364     |   |  |  |
|     |   |          | mm)         |   |  |  |
|     | 1   | 0        | A4 (297     |   |  |  |
|     |   |          | mm)         |   |  |  |
|     | 1   | 1        | Not used    |   |  |  |

| Con | Communication Switch 02 (SP No. 1-104-003) |   |  |  |
|-----|--|---|--|--|
| No  | Function Comments                          |   |  |  |
| 0   | G3 Burst error threshold                   | If there are more consecutive error lines in the received |  |  |

|    |                                   | 1  |  |
|----|-----------------------------------|--|--|
|    | 0: Low 1: High                    | page than the threshold                        | d, the machine will send a negative    |
|    |                                   | response. The Low and                          | d High threshold values depend on      |
|    |                                   | the sub-scan resolution                        | n, and are as follows.                 |
|    |                                   | 100 dpi  | 6(L) →12(H)                            |
|    |                                   | 200 dpi  | 12(L) →24(H)                           |
|    |                                   | 300 dpi  | 18(L) →36(H)                           |
|    |                                   | 400 dpi  | 24(L) →48(H)                           |
| 1  | Acceptable total error line ratio | If the error line ratio for                    | a page exceeds the acceptable ratio,   |
|    | 0: 5% 1: 10%                      | RTN will be sent to the                        | other end.                             |
| 2  | Treatment of pages received       | 0: Pages received with errors are not printed. |  |
|    | with errors during G3 reception   |  |  |
|    | 0: Deleted from memory without    |  |  |
|    | printing                          |  |  |
|    | 1: Printed                        |  |  |
| 3  | Hang-up decision when a           | 0: The next page will be                       | e sent even if RTN or PIN is received. |
|    | negative code (RTN or PIN) is     | 1: The machine will ser                        | nd DCN and hang up if it receives      |
|    | received during G3 immediate      | RTN or PIN.                                    |  |
|    | transmission                      | This bit is ignored for m                      | nemory transmissions or if ECM is      |
|    | 0: No hang-up, 1: Hang-up         | being used.                                    |  |
| 4- | Not used                          | Do not change these se                         | ettings.                               |
| 7  |                                   |  |  |

| Con | Communication Switch 03 (SP No. 1-104-004)     |                                    |  |
|-----|--|------------------------------------|--|
| No  | Function                                       | Comments                           |  |
| 0-  | Maximum number of page retransmissions in a G3 | 00 - FF (Hex) times.               |  |
| 7   | memory transmission                            | This setting is not used if ECM is |  |
|     |  | switched on.                       |  |
|     |  | Default setting - 03(H)            |  |

| Con | Communication Switch 04 (SP No. 1-104-005) |  |  |
|-----|--|--|--|
| No  | Function                                   | Comments   |  |
| 0   | Remote mode switch                         | Set this bit to ON when you wish to switch TEL mode to FAX mode    |  |
|     | (TEL mode)                                 | remotely.  |  |
|     | 0: Disable                                 |  |  |
|     | 1: Enable (Active)                         |  |  |
| 1   | Remote mode switch                         | Set this bit to ON when you wish to turn on the remote mode switch |  |
|     | (FAX mode)                                 | after automatic reception with FAX mode.                           |  |
|     | 0: Disable                                 |  |  |

|    | 1: Enable (Active) |  |
|----|--------------------|--|
| 2  | Remote mode switch | Set this bit to ON when you wish to turn on the remote mode switch |
|    | (AUTO mode)        | after automatic reception with AUTO mode.                          |
|    | 0: Disable         |  |
|    | 1: Enable (Active) |  |
| 3- | Not used           | Do not change the settings.  |
| 7  |                    |  |

| Con | Communication Switch 05 (SP No. 1-104-006) |  |  |
|-----|--|--|--|
| No  | Function                                   | Comments   |  |
| 0-  | Remote mode switch                         | Enter the number to switch between TEL/FAX modes using the |  |
| 3   | number                                     | external phone.  |  |
|     | 00-09 (0-9:HEX)                            |  |  |
| 4-  | Not used                                   | Do not change the settings.                                |  |
| 7   |  |  |  |

| Communication Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Communication Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |
| Communication Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |

| Communication Switch 09 (SP No. 1-104-009) |                            |   |
|--|----------------------------|---|
| No   | Function                   | Comments  |
| 0-   | Minimum interval between   | This value is the minimum time that the machine waits |
| 7  | automatic dialing attempts | before it dials the next destination.                 |

| Con | Communication Switch 0A (SP No. 1-104-011) |   |  |
|-----|--|---|--|
| No  | Function                                   | Comments  |  |
| 0   | Point of resumption of memory              | 0: The transmission begins from the page where    |  |
|     | transmission upon redialing                | transmission failed the previous time.            |  |
|     | 0: From the error page                     | 1: Transmission begins from the first page, using |  |
|     | 1: From page 1                             | normal memory transmission.                       |  |
| 1-  | Not used                                   | Do not change these settings.                     |  |
| 7   |  |   |  |

| Communication Switch 0B (SP No. 1-104-012) |          |                               |
|--|----------|-------------------------------|
| No   | Function | Comments                      |
| 0-   | Not used | Do not change these settings. |
| 3  |          |                               |

| 4  | Printout of the message   | When the machine is acting as a Transfer Station, this bit   |
|----|---------------------------|--|
|    | when acting as a Transfer | determines whether the machine prints the fax message coming |
|    | Station                   | in from the Requesting Terminal.                             |
|    | 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled   |  |
| 5- | Not used                  | Do not change the settings.                                  |
| 7  |                           |  |

# Communication Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)

| Con | Communication Switch 0D (SP No. 1-104-014) |   |  |  |
|-----|--|---|--|--|
| No  | Function                                   | Comments  |  |  |
| 0-  | The available memory threshold,            | 00 to FF (Hex), unit = 4 Kbytes                               |  |  |
| 7   | below which ringing detection (and         | (e.g., 06(H) = 24 Kbytes)                                     |  |  |
|     | therefore reception into memory) is        | One page is about 24 Kbytes.                                  |  |  |
|     | disabled                                   | The machine refers to this setting before each fax            |  |  |
|     |  | reception. If the amount of remaining memory is below         |  |  |
|     |  | this threshold, the machine cannot receive any fax            |  |  |
|     |  | messages.   |  |  |
|     |  | If this setting is kept at 0, the machine will detect ringing |  |  |
|     |  | signals and go into receive mode even if there is no          |  |  |
|     |  | memory available. This will result in communication           |  |  |
|     |  | failure.  |  |  |

| Communication Switch 0E (SP No. 1-104-015) |                            |   |
|--|----------------------------|---|
| No   | Function                   | Comments  |
| 0-   | Minimum interval between   | 06 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 s                            |
| 7  | automatic dialing attempts | (e.g., 06(H) = 12 s)                                  |
|  |                            | This value is the minimum time that the machine waits |
|  |                            | before it dials the next destination.                 |

# Communication Switch 0F – Not used (do not change the settings.)

| Communication Switch 10 (SP No. 1-104-017) |   |               |  |
|--|---|---------------|--|
| No   | Function Comments   |               |  |
| 0-   | Memory transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same | 01 – FE (Hex) |  |
| 7  | destination   | times         |  |

| Communication Switch 11 – Not used (do r | ot change the settings.) |
|--|--------------------------|
|--|--------------------------|

| Con | Communication Switch 12 (SP No. 1-104-019)                         |               |  |  |
|-----|--|---------------|--|--|
| No  | Function Comments  |               |  |  |
| 0-  | Memory transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same | 01 – FF (Hex) |  |  |
| 7   | destination  | minutes       |  |  |

# **Communication Switch 13** – Not used (do not change the settings.)

| Con | Communication Switch 14 (SP No. 1-104-021) |              |                 |  |
|-----|--|--------------|-----------------|--|
| No  | Function                                   |              |                 | Comments   |
| 0   | Inch-to-mm conversion during               |              | version during  | 0: In immediate transmission, data scanned in inch format are  |
|     | transm                                     | transmission |                 | transmitted without conversion.                                |
|     | 0: Disa                                    | bled, 1: l   | Enabled         | In memory transmission, data stored in the SAF memory in       |
|     |  |              |                 | mm format are transmitted without conversion.                  |
|     |  |              |                 | Note: When storing the scanned data into SAF memory, the       |
|     |  |              |                 | fax unit always converts the data into mm format.              |
|     |  |              |                 | 1: The machine converts the scanned data or stored data in     |
|     |  |              |                 | the SAF memory to the format which was specified in the set-   |
|     |  |              |                 | up protocol (DIS/NSF) before transmission.                     |
| 1-  | Not used                                   |              |                 | Do not change the factory settings.                            |
| 5   |  |              |                 |  |
| 6-  | Available unit of resolution in            |              | f resolution in | For the best performance, do not change the factory settings.  |
| 7   | which fax messages are                     |              | ages are        | The setting determined by these bits is informed to the        |
|     | received                                   |              |                 | transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in |
|     | Bit 7                                      | Bit 6        | Unit            | the DIS/NSF frames).   |
|     | 0  | 0            | mm              |  |
|     | 0  | 1            | inch            |  |
|     | 1  | 0            | mm and inch     |  |
|     | 1  | 1            | Not used        |  |

## **Communication Switch 15** – Not used (do not change the settings)

| Com | Communication Switch 16 (SP No. 1-104-023) |  |  |
|-----|--|--|--|
| No  | Function                                   | Comments   |  |
| 0   | Not used                                   | Do not change the settings.                                      |  |
| 1   | Optional G3 unit (G3-2)                    | Change this bit to 1 when installing the first optional G3 unit. |  |
|     | 0: Not installed                           |  |  |
|     | 1: Installed                               |  |  |

| 2   | Not used               |   |
|-----|------------------------|---|
| 3   | Select PSTN connection | This switch enables the G3-2.                               |
|     | 0: Off                 | 0: Off, no connection                                       |
|     | 1: On                  | 1: Recognizes and enables G3-2.                             |
|     |                        | This switch can be used only after G3-2 has been installed. |
| 4-7 | Not used               | Do not change the settings.                                 |

| Con | Communication Switch 17 (SP No. 1-104-024) |  |  |  |
|-----|--|--|--|--|
| No  | Function                                   | Comments   |  |  |
| 0   | SEP reception                              | 0: Polling transmission to another maker's machine using   |  |  |
|     | 0: Disabled                                | the SEP (Selective Polling) signal is disabled.            |  |  |
|     | 1: Enabled                                 |  |  |  |
| 1   | SUB reception                              | 0: Confidential reception to another maker's machine using |  |  |
|     | 0: Disabled                                | the SUB (Sub-address) signal is disabled.                  |  |  |
|     | 1: Enabled                                 |  |  |  |
| 2   | PWD reception                              | 0: Disables features that require PWD (Password) signal    |  |  |
|     | 0: Disabled                                | reception.   |  |  |
|     | 1: Enabled                                 |  |  |  |
| 3-  | Not used                                   | Do not change the settings.                                |  |  |
| 4   |  |  |  |  |
| 5   | PSTN dial-in routing setting               | 1: The machine sets multiple PSTN dial-in numbers in the   |  |  |
|     | 0: OFF                                     | PSTN dial-in line and transfers received data from each    |  |  |
|     | 1: ON                                      | PSTN dial-in number to each address.                       |  |  |
| 6   | Not used                                   | Do not change the settings.                                |  |  |
| 7   | Action when there is no box with           | Change this setting when the customer requires.            |  |  |
|     | an F-code that matches the                 |  |  |  |
|     | received SUB code                          |  |  |  |
|     | 0: Disconnect the line                     |  |  |  |
|     | 1: Receive the message                     |  |  |  |
|     | (using normal reception mode)              |  |  |  |

| Communication Switch 18 (SP No. 1-104-025) |                                  |   |
|--|----------------------------------|---|
| No   | No Function Comments             |   |
| 0-4  | Not used                         | Do not change the settings.                               |
| 5  | IP-Fax dial-in routing selection | 1: Transfers received data to each IP-Fax dial-in number. |
|  | 0: Off                           | IP-Fax dial-in number is a 4-digit number.                |
|  | 1: On                            |   |

| 6 | PSTN 2 dial-in routing | Enables or disables dial-in routing for the PSTN 2 connection. |
|---|------------------------|--|
|   | 0: Off                 |  |
|   | 1: On                  |  |
| 7 | PSTN 3 dial-in routing | Enables or disables dial-in routing for the PSTN 3 connection. |
|   | 0: Off                 |  |
|   | 1: On                  |  |

Communication Switch 19 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 1A - Not used (do not change the settings)

| Con | Communication Switch 1B (SP No. 1-104-028)  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|---|--|--|--|--|
| No  | Function Comments                           |  |  |  |  |
| 0-  | Extension access code                       | If the PABX does not support V.8/V.34 protocol procedure, set this bit |  |  |  |
| 7   | (0 to 7) to turn V.8 to "1" to disable V.8. |  |  |  |  |
|     | protocol On/Off                             | Example: If "0" is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the      |  |  |  |
|     | 0: On                                       | machine detects "0" as the first dialed number, it automatically       |  |  |  |
|     | 1: Off                                      | disables V.8 protocol. (Alternatively, if "3" is the PSTN access code, |  |  |  |
|     |   | set bit 3 to 1.)   |  |  |  |

| Con | Communication Switch 1C (SP No. 1-104-029)                                    |   |  |  |  |  |
|-----|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| No  | Function  | Comments  |  |  |  |  |
| 0-  | Extension access code Refer to communication switch 1B.                       |   |  |  |  |  |
| 1   | 1 (8 and 9) to turn V.8 Example: If "8" is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to |   |  |  |  |  |
|     | protocol On/Off   | machine detects "8" as the first dialed number, it automatically    |  |  |  |  |
|     | 0: On   | disables V.8 protocol. (If "9" is the PSTN access code, use bit 1.) |  |  |  |  |
|     | 1: Off  |   |  |  |  |  |
| 2-  | Not used  | Do not change the settings.   |  |  |  |  |
| 7   |   |   |  |  |  |  |

| Communication Switch 1D - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Communication Switch 1E - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |  |  |
| Communication Switch 1F - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |  |  |

## Bit Switches - 4

## 

• Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

#### G3 Switches

| G3 S | Switch  | 00 (SP I | No. 1-105-001)   |   |
|------|---------|----------|------------------|---|
| No   | Funct   | ion      |                  | Comments  |
| 0    | Monito  | r speak  | er during        | (0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the         |
| 1    | comm    | unicatio | n (TX and RX)    | communication.  |
|      | Bit 1   | Bit 0    | Setting          | (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30     |
|      | 0       | 0        | Disabled         | protocol.   |
|      | 0       | 1        | Up to Phase B    | (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through |
|      | 1       | 0        | All the time     | the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after    |
|      | 1       | 1        | Not used         | testing.  |
| 2    | Monito  | r speak  | er during memory | 1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory                 |
|      | transm  | nission  |                  | transmission.   |
|      | 0: Disa | abled 1: | Enabled          |   |
| 3-   | Not us  | ed       |                  | Do not change the settings.                                     |
| 5    |         |          |                  |   |
| 6    | Dedica  | ated G3  | line mode        | Set this bit to 1 when you wish to dedicate a line for G3.      |
|      | selecti | on       |                  |   |
|      | 0: Off  | 1: On (E | Dedicated)       |   |
| 7    | Not us  | ed       |                  | Do not change this setting.                                     |

| G3 S | G3 Switch 01 (SP No. 1-105-002) |   |  |  |  |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| No   | Function                        | Comments  |  |  |  |
| 0-   | Not used                        | Do not change the settings.   |  |  |  |
| 3    |                                 |   |  |  |  |
| 4    | DIS frame length                | 1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set |  |  |  |
|      | 0: 10 bytes 1: 4                | to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which            |  |  |  |
|      | bytes                           | cannot receive the extended DIS frames).                                      |  |  |  |
| 5    | Not used                        | Do not change the setting.  |  |  |  |
| 6    | Forbid                          | Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless communication problem    |  |  |  |
|      | CED/ANsam                       | is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission.                                     |  |  |  |

|   | output        |                             |
|---|---------------|-----------------------------|
|   | 0: Off        |                             |
|   | 1: On (Forbid |                             |
|   | output)       |                             |
| 7 | Not used      | Do not change this setting. |

| G3 S | G3 Switch 02 (SP No. 1-105-003) |  |  |  |  |
|------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| No   | Function                        | Comments   |  |  |  |
| 0    | G3 protocol mode                | Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with |  |  |  |
|      | used                            | machines that send T.30-standard frames only.                          |  |  |  |
|      | 0: Standard and                 | 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode       |  |  |  |
|      | non-standard                    | communication)   |  |  |  |
|      | 1: Standard only                |  |  |  |  |
| 1-   | Not used                        | Do not change the settings.  |  |  |  |
| 6    |                                 |  |  |  |  |
| 7    | Short preamble                  | Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: Disabled 1:                  | Short Preamble.  |  |  |  |
|      | Enabled                         |  |  |  |  |

| G3 : | G3 Switch 03 (SP No. 1-105-004) |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| No   | Function                        | Comments  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0    | DIS detection number            | 0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | (Echo countermeasure)           | twice.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: 1                            | 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second   |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 1: 2                            | DIS which is caused by echo on the line.                      |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1    | Not Used                        | Do not change the settings.                                   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2    | Not Used                        | Do not change the settings.                                   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3    | ECM frame size                  | Keep this bit at "0" in most cases.                           |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: 256 bytes                    |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 1: 64 bytes                     |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4    | CTC transmission conditions     | 0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the         |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: After one PPR signal         | machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after         |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | received                        | receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in         |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 1: After four PPR signals       | communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps.              |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | received (ITU-T standard)       | √NTransmit≤NRe send   |  |  |  |  |  |
|      |                                 | NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames                       |  |  |  |  |  |
|      |                                 | NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted                 |  |  |  |  |  |

|   |                              | 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back           |
|---|------------------------------|---|
|   |                              | the modem rate after receiving four PPRs.                         |
|   |                              | PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals.                         |
|   |                              | This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.                 |
| 5 | Modem rate used for the next | 1: The machine's TX modem rate will fall back before sending      |
|   | page after receiving a       | the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored |
|   | negative code (RTN or PIN)   | if ECM is being used.   |
|   | 0: No change 1: Fallback     |   |
| 6 | Not used                     | Do not change the settings  |
| 7 | Select detection of reverse  | This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the |
|   | polarity in ringing          | phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this       |
|   | 0: Off                       | setting   |
|   | 1: On                        | 0: No detection   |
|   |                              | 1: Detection (Japan and Korea only)                               |

| G3 Switch 04 (SP No. 1-105-005) |                      |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| No                              | No Function Comments |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0-                              | Training error       | 0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits   |  |  |  |  |
| 3                               | detection threshold  | If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, |  |  |  |  |
|                                 |                      | the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.              |  |  |  |  |
| 4-                              | Not used             | Do not change the settings.  |  |  |  |  |
| 7                               |                      |  |  |  |  |  |

| G3 9 | Switch               | 05 (SF   | P No. | 1-105-0  | 06)  |  |
|------|----------------------|----------|-------|----------|------|--|
| No   | Funct                | Function |       |          |      | Comments   |
| 0-   | Initial <sup>-</sup> | TX mc    | dem r | rate (kb | os)  | These bits set the initial starting modem rate for       |
| 3    | Bit 3                | Bit      | Bit   | Bit 0    | kbps | transmission.  |
|      |                      | 2        | 1     |          |      | Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to |
|      | 0                    | 0        | 0     | 1        | 2.4  | change this for specific receivers.                      |
|      | 0                    | 0        | 1     | 0        | 4.8  | If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8     |
|      | 0                    | 0        | 1     | 1        | 7.2  | protocol should be disabled manually.                    |
|      | 0                    | 1        | 0     | 0        | 9.6  | Cross reference  |
|      | 0                    | 1        | 0     | 1        | 12.0 | V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit 2                |
|      | 0                    | 1        | 1     | 0        | 14.4 |  |
|      | 0                    | 1        | 1     | 1        | 16.8 |  |
|      | 1                    | 0        | 0     | 0        | 19.2 |  |
|      | 1                    | 0        | 0     | 1        | 21.6 |  |

|    | 1         | 0                                   | 1           | 0        | 24.0 |  |
|----|-----------|-------------------------------------|-------------|----------|------|--|
|    | 1         | 0                                   | 1           | 1        | 26.4 |  |
|    | 1         | 1                                   | 0           | 0        | 28.8 |  |
|    | 1         | 1                                   | 0           | 1        | 31.2 |  |
|    | 1         | 1                                   | 1           | 0        | 33.6 |  |
|    | Other     | settin                              | gs - 1      | Not used |      |  |
| 4- | Initial ı | Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 |             |          |      | These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if |
| 5  | kbps.     |                                     |             |          |      | the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.                 |
|    | Bit 5     | В                                   | Bit Setting |          |      |  |
|    |           | 4                                   |             |          |      |  |
|    | 0         | 0                                   | ,           | V.29     |      |  |
|    | 0         | 1                                   | ,           | V.17     |      |  |
|    | 1         | 0                                   | ,           | V.34     |      |  |
|    | 1         | 1                                   |             | Not used |      |  |
| 6- | Not us    | used                                |             |          |      | Do not change the settings.                                    |
| 7  |           |                                     |             |          |      |  |

| G3 S | G3 Switch 06 (SP No. 1-105-007) |        |        |       |      |  |
|------|---------------------------------|--------|--------|-------|------|--|
| No   | Function                        |        |        |       |      | Comments   |
| 0-   | Initial RX modem rate(kbps)     |        |        |       |      | These bits set the initial starting modem rate for |
| 3    | Bit 3                           | Bit    | Bit    | Bit   | kbps | reception.   |
|      |                                 | 2      | 1      | 0     |      | Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems   |
|      | 0                               | 0      | 0      | 1     | 2.4  | during reception.                                  |
|      | 0                               | 0      | 1      | 0     | 4.8  | If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected,   |
|      | 0                               | 0      | 1      | 1     | 7.2  | V.8 protocol should be disabled manually.          |
|      | 0                               | 1      | 0      | 0     | 9.6  | Cross reference                                    |
|      | 0                               | 1      | 0      | 1     | 12.0 | V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2           |
|      | 0                               | 1      | 1      | 0     | 14.4 |  |
|      | 0                               | 1      | 1      | 1     | 16.8 |  |
|      | 1                               | 0      | 0      | 0     | 19.2 |  |
|      | 1                               | 0      | 0      | 1     | 21.6 |  |
|      | 1                               | 0      | 1      | 0     | 24.0 |  |
|      | 1                               | 0      | 1      | 1     | 26.4 |  |
|      | 1                               | 1      | 0      | 0     | 28.8 |  |
|      | 1                               | 1      | 0      | 1     | 31.2 |  |
|      | 1                               | 1      | 1      | 0     | 33.6 |  |
|      | Other settings - Not used       |        |        |       |      |  |
| 4-   | Modem types availa              | ble fo | r rece | ption |      |  |

| 7 | The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modern type |  |       |       |                           |  |  |
|---|--|--|-------|-------|---------------------------|--|--|
|   | for the machine in receive mode.   |  |       |       |                           |  |  |
|   | If V.34 is not selected,   | If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually. |       |       |                           |  |  |
|   | Cross reference  |  |       |       |                           |  |  |
|   | V.8 protocol on/off - G3   | switc  | h 03, | bit 2 |                           |  |  |
|   | Bit 7  | Bit  | Bit   | Bit   | Types                     |  |  |
|   |  | 6  | 5     | 4     |                           |  |  |
|   | 0  | 0  | 0     | 1     | V.27ter                   |  |  |
|   | 0  | 0  | 1     | 0     | V.27ter, V.29             |  |  |
|   | 0  | 0  | 1     | 1     | V.27ter, V.29, V.33       |  |  |
|   | 0  | 1  | 0     | 0     | V.27ter, V.29, V.17       |  |  |
|   | 0  | 1  | 0     | 1     | V.27ter, V.29, V.17, V.34 |  |  |
|   | Other settings - Not us  | ed   |       |       |                           |  |  |

| G3 5 | G3 Switch 07 (SP No. 1-105-008) |                     |             |   |  |
|------|---------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|---|--|
| No   | Func                            | tion                |             | Comments  |  |
| 0-   | PSTN cable equalizer            |                     | e equalizer | Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies  |  |
| 1    | (TX mode: Internal)             |                     | Internal)   | because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone   |  |
|      | Bit                             | Bit                 | Setting     | exchange.   |  |
|      | 1                               | 0                   |             | Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers.   |  |
|      | 0                               | 0                   | None        | Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following |  |
|      | 0                               | 1                   | Low         | symptoms occurs.  |  |
|      | 1                               | 0                   | Medium      | Communication error   |  |
|      | 1                               | 1                   | High        | Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.                              |  |
|      |                                 |                     |             | <b>♦</b> Note   |  |
|      |                                 |                     |             | This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.               |  |
| 2-   | PSTN cable equalizer            |                     | e equalizer | Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies  |  |
| 3    | (RX r                           | (RX mode: Internal) |             | because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone   |  |
|      | Bit Bit Setting                 |                     | Setting     | exchange.   |  |
|      | 3                               | 2                   |             | Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following |  |
|      | 0                               | 0                   | None        | symptoms occurs.  |  |
|      | 0                               | 1                   | Low         | Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc.       |  |
|      | 1                               | 0                   | Medium      | Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.                              |  |
|      | 1                               | 1                   | High        | <b>♦</b> Note   |  |
|      |                                 |                     |             | This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.               |  |
| 4    | PST                             | v cable             | e equalizer | Keep this bit at "1".   |  |
|      | (V.8/V.17 RX mode:              |                     |             |   |  |
|      | External)                       |                     |             |   |  |

|   | 0: Disabled           |  |
|---|-----------------------|--|
|   | 1: Enabled            |  |
| 5 | Not used              | Do not change the settings.  |
| 6 | Parameter selection   | 0: This uses the fixed table in the ROM for dial tone detection.   |
|   | for dial tone         | 1: This uses the specific parameter adjusted with SRAM (69ECBEH -  |
|   | detection             | 69ECDEH). Select this if the dial tone cannot be detected when the |
|   | 0: Normal parameter   | "Normal parameter: 0" is selected.                                 |
|   | 1: Specific parameter |  |
| 7 | Not used              | Do not change the settings.  |

G3 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

| G3 S | 3 Switch 0A (SP No. 1-105-011) |          |               |   |  |  |
|------|--------------------------------|----------|---------------|---|--|--|
| No   | Function                       |          |               | Comments  |  |  |
| 0-   | Maximum allowable              |          | owable        | These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time.              |  |  |
| 1    | carrier                        | drop d   | uring image   | Try a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.                |  |  |
|      | data re                        | eceptio  | n             |   |  |  |
|      | Bit 1                          | Bit 0    | Value         |   |  |  |
|      |                                |          | (ms)          |   |  |  |
|      | 0                              | 0        | 200           |   |  |  |
|      | 0                              | 1        | 400           |   |  |  |
|      | 1                              | 0        | 800           |   |  |  |
|      | 1                              | 1        | Not used      |   |  |  |
| 2    | Select cancellation of         |          | lation of     | This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the  |  |  |
|      | high-s                         | peed R   | X if carrier  | carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode           |  |  |
|      | signal                         | lost wh  | ile receiving |   |  |  |
|      | 0: Off                         |          |               |   |  |  |
|      | 1: On                          |          |               |   |  |  |
| 3    | Not us                         | ed       |               | Do not change the settings  |  |  |
| 4    | Maximum allowable              |          | owable        | This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals |  |  |
|      | frame interval during          |          | l during      | and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other          |  |  |
|      | image data reception.          |          | eception.     | end.  |  |  |
|      | 0: 5 s 1: 13 s                 |          |               | Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.          |  |  |
| 5    | Not used                       |          |               | Do not change the settings.   |  |  |
| 6    | Recon                          | structio | n time for    | When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may    |  |  |

|   | the first line in receive | be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts    |
|---|---------------------------|--|
|   | mode                      | set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30                  |
|   | 0: 6 s 1: 12 s            | recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give |
|   |                           | the sending machine more time to send data.                          |
|   |                           | Refer to error code 0-20.  |
|   |                           | ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of  |
|   |                           | CFR.   |
| 7 | Not used                  | Do not change the settings.  |

# **G3 Switch 0B** Not used (do not change the settings).

| G3 S | G3 Switch 0E (SP No. 1-105-013)       |   |  |  |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| No   | Function                              | Comments  |  |  |
| 0-   | Not used                              | Do not change these settings.                     |  |  |
| 1    |                                       |   |  |  |
| 4-   | Select detection of DTMF/DP detection | This setting determines how to detect the signals |  |  |
| 5    | when using remote switch.             | from the handset when remote switch is active.    |  |  |
|      | 00: DTMF+PSTN (Simultaneous           |   |  |  |
|      | detection)                            |   |  |  |
|      | 01: DTMF                              |   |  |  |
|      | 10: DP (10 PPPS)                      |   |  |  |
|      | 11: DP (20 PPS)                       |   |  |  |

# **G3 Switch 0D** Not used (do not change the settings).

| G3 S | G3 Switch 0E (SP No. 1-105-015)  |   |  |  |  |
|------|--|---|--|--|--|
| No   | Function   | Comments  |  |  |  |
| 0-   | Set CNG send time interval   |   |  |  |  |
| 7    | Some machines on the receiving side may not be able to automatically switch the 3-second |   |  |  |  |
|      | CNG interval.  |   |  |  |  |
|      | High order bit   | 3000-2250ms: 3000-50xNms                          |  |  |  |
|      |  | 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) <= N <= FF (2250 ms) |  |  |  |
|      | Low order bit  | 00-0E(3000-3700ms: 3000+50xNms                    |  |  |  |
|      |  | 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) <= N <= 0F (3700 ms) |  |  |  |

| G3 : | G3 Switch 0F (SP No. 1-105-016) |   |  |  |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|--|
| No   | Function Comments               |   |  |  |
| 0    | Alarm when an error occurred in | If the customer wants to hear an alarm after each error |  |  |

|    | Phase C or later                   | communication, change this bit to "1".                     |
|----|------------------------------------|--|
|    | 0: Disabled                        |  |
|    | 1: Enabled                         |  |
| 1  | Alarm when the handset is off-hook | If the customer wants to hear an alarm if the handset is   |
|    | at the end of communication        | off-hook at the end of fax communication, change this bit  |
|    | 0: Disabled                        | to "1".  |
|    | 1: Enabled                         |  |
| 2- | Not used                           | Do not change these settings.                              |
| 3  |                                    |  |
| 4  | Manual calibration setting         | 1: manually calibrates for communication with a line       |
|    | 0: Off                             | whose current change occurs such as an optical fiber line. |
|    | 1: On                              |  |
| 5- | Not used                           | Do not change the settings.                                |
| 7  |                                    |  |

## Bit Switches - 5

### ( Important

• Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

#### G3-2 and G3-3 Switches

These switches require an optional G3 interface unit.

G3-3 switches are the same as for G3-2 switches.

| G3-2 | G3-2 Switch 00 (SP No. 1-106-001)               |           |               |   |  |
|------|---|-----------|---------------|---|--|
| No   | Function  |           |               | Comments  |  |
| 0    | Monito  | r speak   | er during     | (0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the               |  |
| 1    | commi   | unication | n (TX and RX) | communication.  |  |
|      | Bit 1   | Bit 0     | Setting       | (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30           |  |
|      | 0 0 Disable                                     |           | Disable       | protocol.   |  |
|      | 0 1 Up to Phase B 1 0 All the time 1 1 Not used |           | Up to Phase B | (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through       |  |
|      |   |           | All the time  | the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing. |  |
|      |   |           | Not used      |   |  |
| 2    | Monito  | r speak   | er during     | 1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory                       |  |
|      | memory transmission                             |           |               | transmission.   |  |
|      | 0: Disabled 1: Enabled                          |           |               |   |  |
| 3-   | Not used  |           |               | Do not change the settings.   |  |
| 7    |   |           |               |   |  |

| G3-2 | G3-2 Switch 01 (SP No. 1-106-002) |   |  |  |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|
| No   | Function                          | Comments  |  |  |
| 0-   | Not used                          | Do not change the settings.   |  |  |
| 3    |                                   |   |  |  |
| 4    | DIS frame length                  | 1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set |  |  |
|      | 0: 10 bytes 1: 4                  | to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which            |  |  |
|      | bytes                             | cannot receive the extended DIS frames).                                      |  |  |
| 5    | Not used                          | Do not change the setting.  |  |  |
| 6    | Forbid                            | Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless communication problem    |  |  |
|      | CED/ANSam                         | is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission.                                     |  |  |
|      | output                            |   |  |  |
|      | 0: Off                            |   |  |  |

|   | 1: On (Forbid |                            |
|---|---------------|----------------------------|
|   | output)       |                            |
| 7 | Not used      | Do not change the setting. |

| G3-2 | G3-2 Switch 02 (SP No. 1-106-003) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| No   | Function                          | Comments   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0    | G3 protocol mode                  | Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | used                              | machines that send T.30-standard frames only.                          |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: Standard and                   | 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode       |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | non-standard                      | communication)   |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 1: Standard only                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1-   | Not used                          | Do not change the settings.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4    |                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5    | Al modem rate                     | Selects if the AI modem rate is ON or OFF.                             |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | selection                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: OFF, 1: ON                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6    | Not used                          | Do not change the settings.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7    | Short preamble                    | Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about  |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: Disabled 1:                    | Short Preamble.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|      | Enabled                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| G3-2 | G3-2 Switch 03 (SP No. 1-106-004) |   |  |  |  |  |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| No   | Function                          | Comments  |  |  |  |  |
| 0    | DIS detection number              | 0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame |  |  |  |  |
|      | (Echo countermeasure)             | twice.  |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: 1                              | 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second   |  |  |  |  |
|      | 1: 2                              | DIS which is caused by echo on the line.                      |  |  |  |  |
| 1    | Not Used                          | Do not change the settings.                                   |  |  |  |  |
| 2    | Not Used                          | Do not change the settings.                                   |  |  |  |  |
| 3    | ECM frame size                    | Keep this bit at "0" in most cases.                           |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: 256 bytes                      |   |  |  |  |  |
|      | 1: 64 bytes                       |   |  |  |  |  |
| 4    | CTC transmission conditions       | 0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the         |  |  |  |  |
|      | 0: After one PPR signal           | machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after         |  |  |  |  |
|      | received                          | receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in         |  |  |  |  |
|      | 1: After four PPR signals         | communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps.              |  |  |  |  |
|      | received (ITU-T standard)         | √NTransmit≤NRe send   |  |  |  |  |

|   |                              | Ntransmit = Number of transmitted frames                          |
|---|------------------------------|---|
|   |                              | Nresend = Number of frames to be retransmitted                    |
|   |                              | 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back           |
|   |                              | the modem rate after receiving four PPRs.                         |
|   |                              | PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals.                         |
|   |                              | This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.                 |
| 5 | Modem rate used for the next | 1: The machine's TX modem rate will fall back before sending      |
|   | page after receiving a       | the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored |
|   | negative code (RTN or PIN)   | if ECM is being used.   |
|   | 0: No change 1: Fallback     |   |
| 6 | Not used                     | Do not change the settings  |
| 7 | Select detection of reverse  | This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the |
|   | polarity in ringing          | phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this       |
|   | 0: Off                       | setting   |
|   | 1: On                        | 0: No detection   |
|   |                              | 1: Detection (Japan and Korea only)                               |

| G3-2 | G3-2 Switch 04 (SP No. 1-106-005) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| No   | Function                          | Comments   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0-   | Training error                    | 0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3    | detection threshold               | If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, |  |  |  |  |  |
|      |                                   | the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.              |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4-   | Not used                          | Do not change the settings.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7    |                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| G3-2 | G3-2 Switch 05 (SP No. 1-106-006) |       |       |         |      |  |  |
|------|-----------------------------------|-------|-------|---------|------|--|--|
| No   | Funct                             | ion   |       |         |      | Comments   |  |
| 0-   | Initial                           | TX mc | dem r | ate (kb | os)  | These bits set the initial starting modem rate for       |  |
| 3    | Bit 3                             | Bit   | Bit   | Bit 0   | kbps | transmission.  |  |
|      |                                   | 2     | 1     |         |      | Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to |  |
|      | 0                                 | 0     | 0     | 1       | 2.4  | change this for specific receivers.                      |  |
|      | 0                                 | 0     | 1     | 0       | 4.8  | If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8     |  |
|      | 0                                 | 0     | 1     | 1       | 7.2  | protocol should be disabled manually.                    |  |
|      | 0                                 | 1     | 0     | 0       | 9.6  | Cross reference  |  |
|      | 0                                 | 1     | 0     | 1       | 12.0 | V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit 2                |  |
|      | 0                                 | 1     | 1     | 0       | 14.4 |  |  |
|      | 0                                 | 1     | 1     | 1       | 16.8 |  |  |

|    | 1                         | 0                             | 0    | 0            | 19.2 |  |
|----|---------------------------|-------------------------------|------|--------------|------|--|
|    | 1                         | 0                             | 0    | 1            | 21.6 |  |
|    | 1                         | 0                             | 1    | 0            | 24.0 |  |
|    | 1                         | 0                             | 1    | 1            | 26.4 |  |
|    | 1                         | 1                             | 0    | 0            | 28.8 |  |
|    | 1                         | 1                             | 0    | 1            | 31.2 |  |
|    | Other settings - Not used |                               |      |              |      |  |
| 4- | Initial r                 | I modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 |      |              |      | These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if |
| 5  | kbps.                     |                               |      |              |      | the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.                 |
|    | Bit 5                     | В                             | it S | Setting      |      |  |
|    |                           | 4                             |      |              |      |  |
|    | 0                         | 0                             | ٧    | /.29         |      |  |
|    | 0                         | 1                             | ٧    | <b>/</b> .17 |      |  |
|    | 1                         | 0                             | ٧    | V.34         |      |  |
|    | 1                         | 1                             | N    | lot used     |      |  |
| 6- | Not us                    | ed                            |      |              |      | Do not change the settings.                                    |
| 7  |                           |                               |      |              |      |  |

| G3-2 | 2 Switcl  | h 06 (  | SP No.   | 1-106-00   | 7)      |  |
|------|-----------|---------|----------|------------|---------|--|
| No   | Functi    | ion     |          |            |         | Comments   |
| 0-   | Initial F | RX mc   | dem rat  | te(kbps)   |         | These bits set the initial starting modem rate for   |
| 3    | Bit 3     | Bit     | Bit 1    | Bit 0      | kbps    | reception.   |
|      |           | 2       |          |            |         | Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems     |
|      | 0         | 0       | 0        | 1          | 2.4     | during reception.                                    |
|      | 0         | 0       | 1        | 0          | 4.8     | If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 |
|      | 0         | 0       | 1        | 1          | 7.2     | protocol should be disabled manually.                |
|      | 0         | 1       | 0        | 0          | 9.6     | Cross reference                                      |
|      | 0         | 1       | 0        | 1          | 12.0    | V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2             |
|      | 0         | 1       | 1        | 0          | 14.4    |  |
|      | 0         | 1       | 1        | 1          | 16.8    |  |
|      | 1         | 0       | 0        | 0          | 19.2    |  |
|      | 1         | 0       | 0        | 1          | 21.6    |  |
|      | 1         | 0       | 1        | 0          | 24.0    |  |
|      | 1         | 0       | 1        | 1          | 26.4    |  |
|      | 1         | 1       | 0        | 0          | 28.8    |  |
|      | 1         | 1       | 0        | 1          | 31.2    |  |
|      | Other     | setting | js - Not | used       |         |  |
| 4-   | Moden     | n type  | s availa | ble for re | ception |  |

| 7 | The settir                       | The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type |        |             |         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|----------------------------------|---|--------|-------------|---------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|   | for the machine in receive mode. |   |        |             |         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | If V.34 is                       | If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.                                  |        |             |         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | Cross ref                        | Cross reference   |        |             |         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | V.8 proto                        | col on/off - G3   | switch | n 03, bit 2 | 2       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | Bit 7                            | Bit 6   | Bit    | Bit 4       | Types   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |                                  |   | 5      |             |         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 0                                | 0   | 0      | 1           | V.27ter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 0                                | 0   | 1      | 0           | V.27ter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 0                                | 0   | 1      | 1           | V.27ter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 0                                | 1   | 0      | 0           | V.27ter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 0                                | 1   | 0      | 1           | V.27ter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | Other set                        | tings - Not use   | ed     | •           |         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| G3-2 Switch 07 (SP No. 1-106-008) |                      |         |           |   |  |  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|---------|-----------|---|--|--|
| No                                | Func                 | tion    |           | Comments  |  |  |
| 0-                                | PSTN cable equalizer |         |           | Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies  |  |  |
| 1                                 | (TX n                | node: I | nternal)  | because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone   |  |  |
|                                   | Bit                  | Bit     | Setting   | exchange.   |  |  |
|                                   | 1                    | 0       |           | Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers.   |  |  |
|                                   | 0                    | 0       | None      |   |  |  |
|                                   | 0                    | 1       | Low       | Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following |  |  |
|                                   | 1                    | 0       | Medium    | symptoms occurs.  |  |  |
|                                   | 1                    | 1       | High      | Communication error   |  |  |
|                                   |                      |         |           | Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.                              |  |  |
|                                   |                      |         |           | ◆Note   |  |  |
|                                   |                      |         |           | This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.               |  |  |
| 2-                                | PSTN                 | l cable | equalizer | Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies  |  |  |
| 3                                 | (RX r                | node:   | Internal) | because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone   |  |  |
|                                   | Bit                  | Bit     | Setting   | exchange.   |  |  |
|                                   | 3                    | 2       |           | Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following |  |  |
|                                   | 0                    | 0       | None      | symptoms occurs.  |  |  |
|                                   | 0                    | 1       | Low       | Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc.       |  |  |
|                                   | 1                    | 0       | Medium    | Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.                              |  |  |
|                                   | 1                    | 1       | High      | ◆Note   |  |  |
|                                   |                      |         |           | This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.               |  |  |
| 4                                 | PSTN                 | l cable | equalizer | Keep this bit at "1".   |  |  |
|                                   | (V.8/\               | /.17 R  | X mode:   |   |  |  |

|    | External)   |                             |
|----|-------------|-----------------------------|
|    | 0: Disabled |                             |
|    | 1: Enabled  |                             |
| 5- | Not used    | Do not change the settings. |
| 7  |             |                             |

G3-2 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3-2 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

| G3-2 | 2 Switc        | h 0A (\$  | SP No. 1-10 | 6-011)   |
|------|----------------|-----------|-------------|--|
| No   | Function       |           |             | Comments   |
| 0-   | Maxin          | num all   | owable      | These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time.                   |
| 1    | carrie         | r drop c  | during      | Try a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.                     |
|      | image          | data r    | eception    |  |
|      | Bit 1          | Bit 0     | Value       |  |
|      |                |           | (ms)        |  |
|      | 0              | 0         | 200         |  |
|      | 0              | 1         | 400         |  |
|      | 1              | 0         | 800         |  |
|      | 1              | 1         | Not used    |  |
| 2-   | Not us         | sed       |             | Do not change the settings   |
| 3    |                |           |             |  |
| 4    | Maxin          | num all   | owable      | This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals      |
|      | frame          | interva   | l during    | and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end.          |
|      | image          | data re   | eception.   | Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.               |
|      | 0: 5 s         | 1: 13 s   |             |  |
| 5    | Not us         | sed       |             | Do not change the settings.  |
| 6    | Recor          | nstructio | on time for | When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be      |
|      | the fire       | st line i | n receive   | a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up    |
|      | mode           |           |             | data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But,        |
|      | 0: 6 s 1: 12 s |           |             | if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more |
|      |                |           |             | time to send data.   |
|      |                |           |             | Refer to error code 0-20.  |
|      |                |           |             | ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of      |
|      |                |           |             | CFR.   |
| 7    | Not us         | sed       |             | Do not change the settings.  |

## G3-2 Switch 0B- Not used (do not change the settings)

| G3-2 Switch 0C- Not used | (do not change the settings) |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| OU-E OWILCII OU NOL GOCG | (ao not change the settings) |

**G3-2 Switch 0E**- Not used (do not change the settings)

**G3-2 Switch 0F**- Not used (do not change the settings)

## **G4** Internal Switches

The G4 internal switches (SW00 to 1F) are displayed but do not change these settings.

## **G4** Parameter Switches

The G4 parameter switches (SW00 to 0F) are displayed but do not change these settings.

# Bit Switches - 6

## [] Important

• Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

## **IP Fax Switches**

| IP Fa | ax Switch 00 (SP No. 1- | 111-001)  |
|-------|-------------------------|---|
| No.   | Function                | Comments  |
| 0     | Not used                | Do not change this setting.   |
| 1     | IP Fax Transport        | Selects TCP or UDP protocol for IP-Fax                                  |
|       | 0: TCP, 1: UDP          |   |
| 2     | IP Fax single port      | Selects single data port.   |
|       | selection               |   |
|       | 0: OFF, 1: ON           |   |
|       | (enable)                |   |
| 3     | IP Fax double ports     | Selects whether IP-Fax uses a double port.                              |
|       | (single data port)      |   |
|       | selection               |   |
|       | 0: OFF, 1: ON           |   |
|       | (enable)                |   |
| 4     | IP Fax Gatekeeper       | Enables/disables the gatekeeper for IP-Fax.                             |
|       | 0: OFF, 1: ON           |   |
|       | (enable)                |   |
| 5     | IP Fax T30 bit signal   | Reverses the T30 bit signal.  |
|       | reverse                 |   |
|       | 0: LSB first, 1: MSB    |   |
|       | first                   |   |
| 6     | IP Fax max bit rate     | When "0" is selected, the max bit rate does not affect the value of the |
|       | setting                 | DIS/DCS.  |
|       | 0: Not affected, 1:     | When "1" is selected, the max bit rate affects the value of the         |
|       | Affected                | DIS/DCS.  |
| 7     | IP Fax received         | When "0" is selected, fax data is received without checking the         |
|       | telephone number        | telephone number.   |
|       | confirmation            | When "1" is selected, fax data is received only when confirming that    |
|       | 0: No confirmation, 1:  | the telephone number from the sender matches the registered             |

| Confirmation | telephone number in this machine. If this confirmation fails, the line is |
|--------------|---|
|              | disconnected.   |

| IP Fa | IP Fax Switch 01 (SP No. 1-111-002) |                  |          |  |                       |         |  |
|-------|-------------------------------------|------------------|----------|--|-----------------------|---------|--|
| No.   | Function                            |                  |          | Comme  | ents                  |         |  |
| 0-3   | IP Fax delay I                      | evel setting     |          |  |                       |         |  |
|       | Selects the ad                      | cceptable delay  | / level. |  |                       |         |  |
|       | Level 0 is the                      | highest quality  | ,        |  |                       |         |  |
|       | Default is "00                      | 00" (level 0).   |          |  |                       |         |  |
|       | Bit 3                               | Bit 2            | Bit 1    |  | Bit 0                 |         |  |
|       | 0                                   | 0                | 0        |  | 0                     | Level 0 |  |
|       | 0                                   | 0                | 0        |  | 1                     | Level 1 |  |
|       | 0                                   | 0                | 1        |  | 0                     | Level 2 |  |
|       | 0                                   | 0                | 1        |  | 1                     | Level 3 |  |
| 4-7   | IP Fax pream                        | ble wait time se | etting   | Selects the preamble wait time.                              |                       |         |  |
|       |                                     |                  |          | [00 to 0   | f]                    |         |  |
|       |                                     |                  |          | There are 16 values in this 4-bit binary switch combination. |                       |         |  |
|       |                                     |                  |          | Waiting time: set value level x 100 ms                       |                       |         |  |
|       |                                     |                  |          | Max: 0f (1500 ms) Min: 00 (No wait time)                     |                       |         |  |
|       |                                     |                  |          | The def  | ault is "0000" (00H). |         |  |

| IP Fa | ax Switch 02 (SP No. 1-111-003)   |   |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---|
| No.   | Function                          | Comments  |
| 0     | IP Fax bit signal reverse setting | When "0" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is      |
|       | 0: Maker code setting             | decided by the maker code.                                  |
|       | 1: Internal bit switch setting    | When "1" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is      |
|       |                                   | decided by the internal bit switch.                         |
|       |                                   | When communicating between IP Fax devices, LSB first is     |
|       |                                   | selected.)  |
| 1     | IP Fax transmission speed         | Selects the transmit speed for IP Fax communication.        |
|       | setting                           |   |
|       | 0: Modem speed                    |   |
|       | 1: No limitation                  |   |
| 2     | SIP transport setting             | This bit switch sets the transport that has priority for    |
|       | 0: TCP                            | receiving IP Fax data.                                      |
|       | 1: UDP                            | This function is activated only when the sender has both    |
|       |                                   | TCP and UDP.  |
| 3     | CCM connection                    | When "1" is selected, only the connection call message with |

|     | 0: No CCM connection           | H.323 or no tunneled H.245 is transmitted via CCM.        |
|-----|--------------------------------|---|
|     | 1: CCM connection              |   |
| 4   | Message reception selection    | 0: This answers the INVITE message from the SIP server    |
|     | from non-registered SIP server | not registered for the machine.                           |
|     | 0: Answer                      | 1: This does not receive the INVITE message from the SIP  |
|     | 1: Not answer                  | server not registered for the machine and send a refusal  |
|     |                                | message.  |
| 5   | ECM communication setting      | 0: This does not limit the type of the image compression  |
|     | 0: No limit for image          | with ECM communication.                                   |
|     | compression                    | 1: When the other end machine is Ciscco, this permits the |
|     | 1: Limit for image compression | image compression other than JBIG or MMR with ECM         |
|     |                                | communication.  |
| 6-7 | Not used                       | Do not change these settings.                             |

| IP Fa | ax Switch 03 (SP No. 1-111-004)   |   |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---|
| No.   | Function                          | Comments  |
| 0     | Effective field limitation for G3 | Limits the effective field for standard G3 function |
|       | standard function information     | information.  |
|       | 0: OFF, 1: 4byte (DIS)            |   |
| 1     | Switching between G3 standard and | Enables/disables switching between G3 standard and  |
|       | G3 non standard                   | G3 non-standard.                                    |
|       | 0: Enable switching               |   |
|       | 1: G3 standard only               |   |
| 2     | Not used                          | Do not change this setting.                         |
| 3     | ECM frame size selection at       | Selects the ECM frame size for sending.             |
|       | transmitting                      |   |
|       | 0: 256byte, 1: 64byte             |   |
| 4     | DIS detection times for echo      | Sets the number of times for DIS to detect echoes.  |
|       | prevention                        |   |
|       | 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times             |   |
| 5     | CTC transmission selection        | When "0" is selected, the transmission condition is |
|       | 0: PPRx1                          | decided by error frame numbers.                     |
|       | 1: PPRx4                          | When "1" is selected, the transmission condition is |
|       |                                   | based on the ITU-T method.                          |
| 6     | Shift down setting at receiving   | Selects whether to shift down when negative codes   |
|       | negative code                     | are received.                                       |
|       | 0: OFF, 1: ON                     |   |
| 7     | Not used                          | Do not change this setting.                         |

| IP Fax | IP Fax Switch 04 (SP No. 1-111-005) |  |  |  |  |
|--------|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| No.    | Function                            | Comments                                       |  |  |  |
| 0-3    | TCF error threshold                 | Sets the TCF error threshold level. [00 to 0f] |  |  |  |
|        |                                     | The default is "1111" (0fH).                   |  |  |  |
| 4-7    | Not used                            | Do not change these settings.                  |  |  |  |

| IP Fa | IP Fax Switch 05 (SP No. 1-111-006)       |        |              |       |          |   |
|-------|---|--------|--------------|-------|----------|---|
| No.   | Function                                  |        |              |       |          | Comments                                      |
| 0-3   | 3 Modem bit rate setting for transmission |        |              | ransn | nission  | Sets the modem bit rate for transmission. The |
|       | (kbps)                                    |        |              |       |          | default is "0110" (14.4K bps).                |
|       | Bit 3                                     | Bit    | Bit 1        | Bit   | kbps     |   |
|       |   | 2      |              | 0     |          |   |
|       | 0   | 0      | 0            | 1     | 2.4      |   |
|       | 0   | 0      | 1            | 1     | 4.8      |   |
|       | 0   | 0      | 1            | 1     | 7.2      |   |
|       | 0   | 1      | 0            | 0     | 9.6      |   |
|       | 0   | 1      | 0            | 1     | 12.0     |   |
|       | 0   | 1      | 1            | 0     | 14.4     |   |
| 4-5   | Modem s                                   | etting | for transmis | sion  |          | Sets the modem type for transmission.         |
|       | Bit 5                                     | В      | it 4         | 1     | Types    | The default is "00" (V29).                    |
|       | 0   | 0      |              | ١     | /29      |   |
|       | 0   | 1      | 1            |       | /17      |   |
|       | 1   | 0      |              | ١     | Not used |   |
|       | 1   | 1      | 1            |       | Not used |   |
| 6-7   | Not used                                  | •      |              |       |          | Do not change these settings.                 |

| IP Fa | IP Fax Switch 06 (SP No. 1-111-007)  |                 |                |        |                              |  |  |
|-------|--|-----------------|----------------|--------|------------------------------|--|--|
| No.   | Function   |                 |                |        | omments                      |  |  |
| 0-3   | Modem bit rate setting for reception   |                 |                |        |                              |  |  |
|       | Sets the mo  | dem bit rate    | for reception. | The de | fault is "0110" (14.4K bps). |  |  |
| 4-7   | Modem sett   | ting for recept | tion           |        |                              |  |  |
|       | Sets the modem type for reception. The default is "0100" (V27ter, V29, V17). |                 |                |        |                              |  |  |
|       | Bit 7  | 7 Bit 6 Bit 5   |                |        | Types                        |  |  |
|       | 0  | 0               | 0              | 1      | V.27ter                      |  |  |
|       | 0  | 0               | 1              | 0      | V.27ter, V.29                |  |  |
|       | 0 0 1 1 V.27ter, V.29, V.33  |                 |                |        |                              |  |  |
|       | 0  | 1               | 0              | 0      | V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33     |  |  |
|       | Other settin   | gs - Not used   |                |        |                              |  |  |

| IP Fa | IP Fax Switch 07 (SP No. 1-111-008)       |   |  |  |  |  |
|-------|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| No.   | Function                                  | Comments  |  |  |  |  |
| 0     | TSI information                           | Adds or does not add TSI information to NSS(S).     |  |  |  |  |
|       | 0: Not added, 1: Added                    |   |  |  |  |  |
| 1     | DCN transmission setting at T1 timeout    | Transmits or does not transmit DCN at T1 timeout.   |  |  |  |  |
|       | 0: Not transmitted                        |   |  |  |  |  |
|       | 1: Transmitted                            |   |  |  |  |  |
| 2     | Not used                                  | Do not change this setting.                         |  |  |  |  |
| 3     | Hang up setting at DIS reception disabled | Sets whether the machine disconnects after DIS      |  |  |  |  |
|       | 0: No hang up                             | reception.  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 1: Hang up after transmitting DCN         |   |  |  |  |  |
| 4     | Number of times for training              | Selects the number of times training is done at the |  |  |  |  |
|       | 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times                     | same bit rate.                                      |  |  |  |  |
| 5     | Space CSI transmission setting at no CSI  | When "0" is selected, frame data is enabled.        |  |  |  |  |
|       | registration                              | When "1" is selected, the transmitted data is all   |  |  |  |  |
|       | 0: Not transmitted                        | spaces.   |  |  |  |  |
|       | 1: Transmitted                            |   |  |  |  |  |
| 6-7   | Not used                                  | Do not change these settings.                       |  |  |  |  |

| IP Fa | IP Fax Switch 08 (SP No. 1-111-009) |          |       |   |  |  |  |
|-------|-------------------------------------|----------|-------|---|--|--|--|
| No.   | Function                            |          |       | Comments  |  |  |  |
| 0-1   | T1 time                             | er adjus | tment | Adjusts the T1 timer.   |  |  |  |
|       | Bit 1                               | Bit 0    |       | The default is "00" (35 seconds).   |  |  |  |
|       | 0                                   | 0        | 35 s  |   |  |  |  |
|       | 0                                   | 1        | 40 s  |   |  |  |  |
|       | 1                                   | 0        | 50 s  |   |  |  |  |
|       | 1                                   | 1        | 60 s  |   |  |  |  |
| 2-3   | T4 time                             | er adjus | tment | Adjust the T4 timer.  |  |  |  |
|       | Bit 3                               | Bit 2    |       | The default is "00" (3 seconds).  |  |  |  |
|       | 0                                   | 0        | 3 s   |   |  |  |  |
|       | 0                                   | 1        | 3.5   |   |  |  |  |
|       |                                     |          | s     |   |  |  |  |
|       | 1                                   | 0        | 4 s   |   |  |  |  |
|       | 1                                   | 1        | 5 s   |   |  |  |  |
| 4-5   | T0 timer adjustment                 |          | tment | Adjusts the fail safe timer. This timer sets the interval between "setup" |  |  |  |
|       | Bit 5                               | Bit 4    |       | data transmission and T.38 phase decision. If your destination return is  |  |  |  |
|       | 0                                   | 0        | 75 s  | late on the network or G3 fax return is late, adjust the longer interval  |  |  |  |

|     | 0           | 1 | 120 | timer.                            |
|-----|-------------|---|-----|-----------------------------------|
|     |             |   | s   | The default is "00" (75 seconds). |
|     | 1           | 0 | 180 |                                   |
|     |             |   | s   |                                   |
|     | 1           | 1 | 240 |                                   |
|     |             |   | s   |                                   |
| 6-7 | Not used Do |   |     | Do not change these settings.     |

| IP Fa | ax Switch             | 09 (SP N     | o. 1-111-010) |  |  |  |
|-------|-----------------------|--------------|---------------|--|--|--|
| No.   | Function              | n            |               | Comments   |  |  |
| 0     | Network               | I/F setting  | for SIP       | Selects the connection type (IPV4 or IPV6) to connect to the |  |  |
|       | connection            |              |               | SIP server.  |  |  |
|       | 0: IPv4               |              |               |  |  |  |
|       | 1: IPv6.              |              |               |  |  |  |
| 1     | Network               | I/F setting  | for Fax       | 0: The I/F setting for fax communication follows the setting |  |  |
|       | commun                | ication      |               | for SIP server connection.                                   |  |  |
|       | 0: Same               | setting as   | SIP server    | 1: The negotiation between the SIP server and the device     |  |  |
|       | connecti              | on           |               | decides whether IPv4 or IPv6 is used for the I/F setting for |  |  |
|       | 1: Autom              | natic settin | g             | fax communication.   |  |  |
| 2     | Record-ı              | oute settir  | ng            | 0: Disables the record-route function of the SIP server.     |  |  |
|       | 0: Disab              | le           |               | 1: Enables the record-route function of the SIP server.      |  |  |
|       | 1: Enabl              | е            |               |  |  |  |
| 3-4   | re-INVIT              | E transmis   | ssion delay   | This changes the interval for transmit re-INVITE after       |  |  |
|       | timer set             | ting         |               | receiving the ACK message transmitted by T.38 device.        |  |  |
|       | Bit 4                 | Bit 3        |               |  |  |  |
|       | 0                     | 0            | No delay      |  |  |  |
|       | 0                     | 1            | 1 sec         |  |  |  |
|       | 1                     | 0            | 2 sec         |  |  |  |
|       | 1                     | 1            | 3 sec         |  |  |  |
| 5     | SIP-IPF               | X: Adding    | vender        | 0: Use this setting normally.                                |  |  |
|       | information selection |              |               | 1: This setting is used only when a customer wants to        |  |  |
|       | 0: Declare            |              |               | connect the machine with SIP server + VOIP-GW provided       |  |  |
|       | T38VendorInfo=RICOH   |              |               | by AVAYA Inc.  |  |  |
|       | 1: Not de             | eclare       |               |  |  |  |
|       | T38Vend               | dorInfo=RI   | СОН           |  |  |  |
| 6-7   | Not used              | d.           |               | Do not change these settings.                                |  |  |

IP Fax Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings)

| IP Fax Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| IP Fax Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |
| IP Fax Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings) |  |  |  |

| IP Fa | IP Fax Switch 0E (SP No. 1-111-013) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| No.   | Function                            | Comments   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0-1   | SIP: IP-FAX port mode               | Switch the port mode for IP-FAX (T38 transport: UDP) at SIP call |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (UDP)                               | control.   |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 00: 3 port mode                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 01: 2 port mode                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 10: 1 port mode                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2-3   | SIP: IP-FAX port mode               | Switch the port mode for IP-FAX (T38 transport: TCP) at SIP call |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | (TCP)                               | control.   |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 00: 3 port mode                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 01: 2 port mode                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 10: 1 port mode                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4-7   | Not used.                           | Do not change these settings.                                    |  |  |  |  |  |

## **NCU Parameters**

#### **NCU Parameters**

The following tables give the RAM addresses and the parameter calculation units that the machine uses for ringing signal detection and automatic dialing. The factory settings for each country are also given. Most of these must be changed by RAM read/write (SP2-102), but some can be changed using NCU Parameter programming (SP2-103, 104 and 105); if SP2-103, 104 and 105 can be used, this will be indicated in the Remarks column. The RAM is programmed in hex code unless (BCD) is included in the Unit column.



- The following addresses describe settings for the standard NCU.
- Change the fourth digit from "5" to "6" (e.g. 680500 to 680600) for the settings for the first optional G3 interface unit and from "5" to "7" (e.g. 680700) for the settings for the second optional G3 interface unit.

| Address |   |                                   | Fu | nction       |    |    |  |  |  |
|---------|---|-----------------------------------|----|--------------|----|----|--|--|--|
| 680500  | Country/Area code for NCU parameters  |                                   |    |              |    |    |  |  |  |
|         | Use the Hex value to program the country/area code directly into this address |                                   |    |              |    |    |  |  |  |
|         | decimal value to program it using SP2-103-001                                 |                                   |    |              |    |    |  |  |  |
|         | Country   | Country Decimal Hex Country Decim |    |              |    |    |  |  |  |
|         | /Area   |                                   |    | /Area        |    |    |  |  |  |
|         | France  | 00                                | 00 | Asia         | 18 | 12 |  |  |  |
|         | Germany   | 01                                | 01 | Japan        | 19 | 13 |  |  |  |
|         | UK  | 02                                | 02 | Hong Kong    | 20 | 14 |  |  |  |
|         | Italy   | 03                                | 03 | South Africa | 21 | 15 |  |  |  |
|         | Austria   | 04                                | 04 | Australia    | 22 | 16 |  |  |  |
|         | Belgium   | 05                                | 05 | New Zealand  | 26 | 17 |  |  |  |
|         | Denmark   | 06                                | 06 | Singapore    | 24 | 18 |  |  |  |
|         | Finland   | 07                                | 07 | Malaysia     | 25 | 19 |  |  |  |
|         | Ireland   | 08                                | 08 | China        | 26 | 1A |  |  |  |
|         | Norway  | 09                                | 09 | Taiwan       | 27 | 1B |  |  |  |
|         | Sweden 10 0   |                                   | 0A | Korea        | 28 | 1C |  |  |  |
|         | Switzerland   | 11                                | 0B | Brazil       | 29 | 1D |  |  |  |
|         | Portugal  | 12                                | 0C | Turkey       | 32 | 20 |  |  |  |
|         | Holland   | 13                                | 0D | Greece       | 33 | 21 |  |  |  |
|         | Spain   | 14                                | 0E | Hungary      | 34 | 22 |  |  |  |
|         | Israel  | 15                                | 0F | Czech        | 35 | 23 |  |  |  |
|         | USA   | 17                                | 11 | Poland       | 36 | 24 |  |  |  |

| Address | Function                          | Unit     | Remarks                                |
|---------|-----------------------------------|----------|--|
| 680501  | Line current detection time       | 20 ms    | Line current detection is disabled.    |
| 680502  | Line current wait time            |          | Line current is not detected if 680501 |
| 680503  | Line current drop detect time     |          | contains FF.                           |
| 680504  | PSTN dial tone frequency upper    | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | limit (high byte)                 |          | detection is disabled.                 |
| 680505  | PSTN dial tone frequency upper    |          |  |
|         | limit (low byte)                  |          |  |
| 680506  | PSTN dial tone frequency lower    | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | limit (high byte)                 |          | detection is disabled.                 |
| 680507  | PSTN dial tone frequency lower    |          |  |
|         | limit (low byte)                  |          |  |
| 680508  | PSTN dial tone detection time     | 20 ms    | If 680508 contains FF (H), the         |
| 680509  | PSTN dial tone reset time (LOW)   |          | machine pauses for the pause time      |
| 68050A  | PSTN dial tone reset time (HIGH)  |          | (address 68050D / 68050E).             |
| 68050B  | PSTN dial tone continuous tone    |          | Italy: See Note 2.                     |
|         | time                              |          |  |
| 68050C  | PSTN dial tone permissible drop   |          |  |
|         | time                              |          |  |
| 68050D  | PSTN wait interval (LOW)          |          | -                                      |
| 68050E  | PSTN wait interval (HIGH)         |          |  |
| 68050F  | PSTN ring-back tone detection     | 20 ms    | Detection is disabled if this contains |
|         | time                              |          | FF.                                    |
| 680510  | PSTN ring-back tone off detection | 20 ms    | -                                      |
|         | time                              |          |  |
| 680511  | PSTN detection time for silent    | 20 ms    | -                                      |
|         | period after ring-back tone       |          |  |
|         | detected (LOW)                    |          |  |
| 680512  | PSTN detection time for silent    | 20 ms    | -                                      |
|         | period after ring-back tone       |          |  |
|         | detected (HIGH)                   |          |  |
| 680513  | PSTN busy tone frequency upper    | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | limit (high byte)                 | _        | detection is disabled.                 |
| 680514  | PSTN busy tone frequency upper    |          |  |
|         | limit (low byte)                  |          |  |
| 680515  | PSTN busy tone frequency lower    | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | limit (high byte)                 | _        | detection is disabled.                 |
| 680516  | PSTN busy tone frequency lower    |          |  |

| Address | Function                         | Unit     | Remarks                                 |
|---------|----------------------------------|----------|---|
|         | limit (low byte)                 |          |   |
| 680517  | PABX dial tone frequency upper   | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
|         | limit (high byte)                |          | detection is disabled.                  |
| 680518  | PABX dial tone frequency upper   |          |   |
|         | limit (low byte)                 |          |   |
| 680519  | PABX dial tone frequency lower   | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
|         | limit (high byte)                |          | detection is disabled.                  |
| 68051A  | PABX dial tone frequency lower   |          |   |
|         | limit (low byte)                 |          |   |
| 68051B  | PABX dial tone detection time    | 20 ms    | If 68051B contains FF, the machine      |
| 68051C  | PABX dial tone reset time (LOW)  |          | pauses for the pause time (680520 /     |
| 68051D  | PABX dial tone reset time (HIGH) | -        | 680521).                                |
| 68051E  | PABX dial tone continuous tone   |          |   |
|         | time                             |          |   |
| 68051F  | PABX dial tone permissible drop  |          |   |
|         | time                             | -        |   |
| 680520  | PABX wait interval (LOW)         | -        | -                                       |
| 680521  | PABX wait interval (HIGH)        |          |   |
| 680522  | PABX ringback tone detection     | 20 ms    | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
|         | time                             |          | detection is disabled.                  |
| 680523  | PABX ringback tone off detection | 20 ms    |   |
|         | time                             |          |   |
| 680524  | PABX detection time for silent   | 20 ms    | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
|         | period after ringback tone       |          | detection is disabled.                  |
|         | detected (LOW)                   |          |   |
| 680525  | PABX detection time for silent   | 20 ms    |   |
|         | period after ringback tone       |          |   |
|         | detected (HIGH)                  |          |   |
| 680526  | PABX busy tone frequency upper   | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
|         | limit (high byte)                | -        | detection is disabled.                  |
| 680527  | PABX busy tone frequency upper   |          |   |
| 000500  | limit (low byte)                 | H (BOB)  | If he the calculation and the EE (1) is |
| 680528  | PABX busy tone frequency lower   | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
| 000500  | limit (high byte)                | -        | detection is disabled.                  |
| 680529  | PABX busy tone frequency lower   |          |   |
| 000-00  | limit (low byte)                 |          |   |
| 68052A  | Busy tone ON time: range 1       | 20 ms    | -                                       |

| Address | Function                               | Unit           | Remarks                                |
|---------|--|----------------|--|
| 68052B  | Busy tone OFF time: range 1            |                |  |
| 68052C  | Busy tone ON time: range 2             |                |  |
| 68052D  | Busy tone OFF time: range 2            |                |  |
| 68052E  | Busy tone ON time: range 3             |                |  |
| 68052F  | Busy tone OFF time: range 3            | 20 ms          |  |
| 680530  | Busy tone ON time: range 4             |                |  |
| 680531  | Busy tone OFF time: range 4            |                |  |
| 680532  | Busy tone continuous tone              |                |  |
|         | detection time                         |                |  |
| 680533  | Busy tone signal state time tolerand   | e for all rang | es, and number of cycles required for  |
|         | detection (a setting of 4 cycles mea   | ns that ON-C   | PFF-ON or OFF-ON-OFF must be           |
|         | detected twice).                       |                |  |
|         | Tolerance (±)                          |                |  |
|         | Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 75% Bits 2 and 3  | must always    | be kept at 0.                          |
|         | Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 50% Bits 2 and 3  | must always    | be kept at 0.                          |
|         | Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 25%               |                |  |
|         | Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 12.5%             |                |  |
|         | Bits 7, 6, 5, 4 - number of cycles red | quired for cac | lence detection                        |
| 680534  | International dial tone frequency      | Hz (BCD)       | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | upper limit (high byte)                |                | detection is disabled.                 |
| 680535  | International dial tone frequency      |                |  |
|         | upper limit (low byte)                 |                |  |
| 680536  | International dial tone frequency      | Hz (BCD)       | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | lower limit (high byte)                |                | detection is disabled.                 |
| 680537  | International dial tone frequency      |                |  |
|         | lower limit (low byte)                 |                |  |
| 680538  | International dial tone detection      | 20 ms          | If 680538 contains FF, the machine     |
|         | time                                   |                | pauses for the pause time (68053D /    |
| 680539  | International dial tone reset time     |                | 68053E).                               |
|         | (LOW)                                  |                | Belgium: See Note 2.                   |
| 68053A  | International dial tone reset time     |                |  |
|         | (HIGH)                                 |                |  |
| 68053B  | International dial tone continuous     |                |  |
|         | tone time                              |                |  |
| 68053C  | International dial tone permissible    |                |  |
|         | drop time                              |                |  |
| 68053D  | International dial wait interval       |                | -                                      |

| Address | Function                               | Unit     | Remarks                                 |
|---------|--|----------|---|
|         | (LOW)                                  |          |   |
| 68053E  | International dial wait interval       |          |   |
|         | (HIGH)                                 |          |   |
| 68053F  | Country dial tone upper frequency      | Hz (BCD) | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
|         | limit (HIGH)                           |          | detection is disabled.                  |
| 680540  | Country dial tone upper frequency      |          |   |
|         | limit (LOW)                            |          |   |
| 680541  | Country dial tone lower frequency      |          | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone  |
|         | limit (HIGH)                           |          | detection is disabled.                  |
| 680542  | Country dial tone lower frequency      |          |   |
|         | limit (LOW)                            |          |   |
| 680543  | Country dial tone detection time       | 20 ms    | If 680543 contains FF, the machine      |
| 680544  | Country dial tone reset time           |          | pauses for the pause time (680548 /     |
| 000545  | (LOW)                                  |          | 680549).                                |
| 680545  | Country dial tone reset time           |          |   |
| 600546  | (HIGH)                                 |          |   |
| 680546  | Country dial tone continuous tone time | -        | -                                       |
| 680547  | Country dial tone permissible drop     | 20 ms    | _                                       |
| 000047  | time                                   | 201113   |   |
| 680548  | Country dial wait interval (LOW)       |          |   |
| 680549  | Country dial wait interval (HIGH)      |          |   |
| 68054A  | Time between opening or closing        | 1 ms     | See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-012       |
|         | the DO relay and opening the           |          | (parameter 11).                         |
|         | OHDI relay                             |          |   |
| 68054B  | Break time for pulse dialing           | 1 ms     | See Note 3.                             |
|         |  |          | SP2-103-013 (parameter 12).             |
| 68054C  | Make time for pulse dialing            | 1 ms     | See Note 3.                             |
|         |  |          | SP2-103-014 (parameter 13).             |
| 68054D  | Time between final OHDI relay          | 1 ms     | See Notes 3, 6 and 8.                   |
|         | closure and DO relay opening or        |          | SP2-103-015 (parameter 14).             |
|         | closing                                |          | This parameter is only valid in Europe. |
| 68054E  | Minimum pause between dialed           | 20 ms    | See Note 3 and 8. SP2-103-016           |
|         | digits (pulse dial mode)               |          | (parameter 15).                         |
| 68054F  | Time waited when a pause is            |          | SP2-103-017 (parameter 16). See         |
|         | entered at the operation panel         |          | Note 3.                                 |
| 680550  | DTMF tone on time                      | 1 ms     | SP2-103-018 (parameter 17).             |

| Address | Function                           | Ur     | nit   | Remarks                                   |
|---------|------------------------------------|--------|-------|---|
| 680551  | DTMF tone off time                 |        |       | SP2-103-019 (parameter 18).               |
| 680552  | Tone attenuation level of DTMF     | -N x 0 | ).5   | SP2-103-020 (parameter 19).               |
|         | signals while dialing              | -3.5 c | dBm   | See Note 5.                               |
| 680553  | Tone attenuation value difference  | -dBm   | х     | SP2-103-021 (parameter 20).               |
|         | between high frequency tone and    | 0.5    |       | The setting must be less than –5dBm,      |
|         | low frequency tone in DTMF         |        |       | and should not exceed the setting at      |
|         | signals                            |        |       | 680552h above.                            |
|         |                                    |        |       | See Note 5.                               |
| 680554  | PSTN: DTMF tone attenuation        | -N x 0 | ).5   | SP2-103-022 (parameter 21). See           |
|         | level after dialing                | -3.5 c | dBm   | Note 5.                                   |
| 680555  | ISDN: DTMF tone attenuation        | -dBm   | Х     | See Note 5                                |
|         | level after dialing                | 0.5    |       |   |
| 680556  | Not used                           | -      |       | Do not change the settings.               |
| 680557  | Time between 68054Dh (NCU          | 1 ms   |       | This parameter takes effect when the      |
|         | parameter 14) and 68054Eh          |        |       | country code is set to France.            |
|         | (NCU parameter 15)                 |        |       |   |
| 680558  | Not used                           | -      |       | Do not change the setting.                |
| 680559  | Grounding time (ground start       | 20 ms  | 6     | The Gs relay is closed for this interval. |
|         | mode)                              |        |       |   |
| 68055A  | Break time (flash start mode)      | 1 ms   |       | The OHDI relay is open for this           |
|         |                                    |        |       | interval.                                 |
| 68055B  | International dial access code     | BCD    |       | For a code of 100:                        |
|         | (High)                             |        |       | 68055B - F1                               |
| 68055C  | International dial access code     |        |       | 68055C - 00                               |
|         | (Low)                              |        |       |   |
| 68055D  | PSTN access pause time             | 20 ms  | 6     | This time is waited for each pause        |
|         |                                    |        |       | input after the PSTN access code. If      |
|         |                                    |        |       | this address contains FF [H], the         |
|         |                                    |        |       | pause time stored in address 68054F       |
|         |                                    |        |       | is used.                                  |
|         |                                    |        |       | Do not set a number more than 7 in        |
|         |                                    |        |       | the UK.                                   |
| 68055E  | Progress tone detection level, and |        | Bit 7 | : 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -25.0 dBm       |
|         | cadence detection enable flags     |        | Bit 7 | : 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = -35.0 dBm       |
|         |                                    |        | Bit 7 | : 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -30.0 dBm       |
|         |                                    |        | Bit 7 | : 1, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -40.0 dBm       |
|         |                                    |        | Bit 7 | : 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -49.0 dBm       |

| Address | Function                             | Uni        | t      | Remarks                       |
|---------|--------------------------------------|------------|--------|-------------------------------|
|         |                                      |            | Bits 2 | 2, 0 - See Note 2.            |
| 68055F  | Not used                             | -          |        | Do not change the settings.   |
| То      |                                      |            |        |                               |
| 680564  |                                      |            |        |                               |
| 680565  | Long distance call prefix (HIGH)     | BCD        |        | For a code of 0:              |
| 680566  | Long distance call prefix (LOW)      | BCD        |        | 680565 – FF                   |
|         |                                      |            |        | 680566 - FF                   |
| 680567  | Not used                             | -          |        | Do not change the settings.   |
| to      |                                      |            |        |                               |
| 680571  |                                      |            |        |                               |
| 680572  | Acceptable ringing signal            | 1000/1     | ٧      | SP2-103-003 (parameter 02).   |
|         | frequency: range 1, upper limit      | (Hz).      |        |                               |
| 680573  | Acceptable ringing signal            |            |        | SP2-103-004 (parameter 03).   |
|         | frequency: range 1, lower limit      |            |        |                               |
| 680574  | Acceptable ringing signal            |            |        | SP2-103-005 (parameter 04).   |
|         | frequency: range 2, upper limit      |            |        |                               |
| 680575  | Acceptable ringing signal            |            |        | SP2-103-006 (parameter 05).   |
|         | frequency: range 2, lower limit      |            |        |                               |
| 680576  | Number of rings until a call is      | 1          |        | SP2-103-007 (parameter 06).   |
|         | detected                             |            |        | The setting must not be zero. |
| 680577  | Minimum required length of the       | 20 ms      |        | See Note 4.                   |
|         | first ring                           |            |        | SP2-103-008 (parameter 07).   |
| 680578  | Minimum required length of the       | 20 ms      |        | SP2-103-009 (parameter 08).   |
|         | second and subsequent rings          |            |        |                               |
| 680579  | Ringing signal detection reset       | 20 ms      |        | SP2-103-010 (parameter 09).   |
|         | time (LOW)                           |            |        |                               |
| 68057A  | Ringing signal detection reset       |            |        | SP2-103-011 (parameter 10).   |
|         | time (HIGH)                          |            |        |                               |
| 68057B  | Not used                             | -          |        | Do not change the settings.   |
| to      |                                      |            |        |                               |
| 680580  |                                      |            |        |                               |
| 680581  | Interval between dialing the last    | 20 ms      |        | Factory setting: 500 ms       |
|         | digit and switching the Oh relay     |            |        |                               |
|         | over to the external telephone       |            |        |                               |
|         | when dialing from the operation      |            |        |                               |
|         | panel in handset mode.               |            |        |                               |
| 680582  | Bits 0 and 1 - Handset off-hook dete | ection tir | ne     | -                             |

| Address | Function                            | Unit        | Remarks                                |
|---------|-------------------------------------|-------------|--|
|         | Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 ms          |             |  |
|         | Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 1 = 800 ms          |             |  |
|         | Other Not used                      |             |  |
|         | Bits 2 and 3 - Handset on-hook dete | ection time |  |
|         | Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = 200 ms         |             |  |
|         | Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 800 ms         |             |  |
|         | Other Not used                      |             |  |
|         | Bits 4 to 7 - Not used              | ,           |  |
| 680583  | Not used                            | -           | Do not change the settings.            |
| То      |                                     |             |  |
| 6805A0  |                                     |             |  |
| 6805A1  | Acceptable CED detection            | BCD (Hz)    | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | frequency upper limit (high byte)   |             | detection is disabled.                 |
| 6805A2  | Acceptable CED detection            |             |  |
|         | frequency upper limit (low byte)    |             |  |
| 6805A3  | Acceptable CED detection            | BCD (Hz)    | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | frequency lower limit (high byte)   |             | detection is disabled.                 |
| 6805A4  | Acceptable CED detection            |             |  |
|         | frequency lower limit (low byte)    |             |  |
| 6805A5  | CED detection time                  | 20 ms ±     | Factory setting: 200 ms                |
|         |                                     | 20 ms       |  |
| 6805A6  | Acceptable CNG detection            | BCD (Hz)    | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | frequency upper limit (high byte)   |             | detection is disabled.                 |
| 6805A7  | Acceptable CNG detection            |             |  |
|         | frequency upper limit (low byte)    |             |  |
| 6805A8  | Acceptable CNG detection            | BCD (Hz)    | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | frequency lower limit (high byte)   |             | detection is disabled.                 |
| 6805A9  | Acceptable CNG detection            |             |  |
|         | frequency lower limit (low byte)    |             |  |
| 6805AA  | Not used                            | -           | Do not change the setting.             |
| 6805AB  | CNG on time                         | 20 ms       | Factory setting: 500 ms                |
| 6805AC  | CNG off time                        | 20 ms       | Factory setting: 3000 ms               |
| 6805AD  | Number of CNG cycles required       | -           | The data is coded in the same way as   |
|         | for detection                       |             | address 680533.                        |
| 6805AE  | Not used                            | -           | Do not change the settings.            |
| 6805AF  | Acceptable AI short protocol tone   | Hz (BCD)    | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |
|         | (800Hz) detection frequency         |             | detection is disabled.                 |

| Address   | Function   | Unit                            | Remarks                                |  |
|-----------|--|---------------------------------|--|--|
|           | upper limit (high byte)  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805B0    | Acceptable Al short protocol tone  |                                 |  |  |
|           | (800Hz) detection frequency  |                                 |  |  |
|           | upper limit (low byte)   |                                 |  |  |
| 6805B1    | Acceptable AI short protocol tone  | Hz(BCD)                         | If both addresses contain FF (H), tone |  |
|           | (800Hz) detection frequency lower  |                                 | detection is disabled.                 |  |
|           | limit (high byte)  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805B2    | Acceptable Al short protocol tone  |                                 |  |  |
|           | (800Hz) detection frequency lower  |                                 |  |  |
|           | limit (low byte)   |                                 |  |  |
| 6805B3    | Detection time for 800 Hz AI short   | 20 ms                           | Factory setting: 360 ms                |  |
|           | protocol tone  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805B4    | PSTN: TX level from the modem  | -N – 3                          | SP2-103-002 (parameter 01).            |  |
|           |  | dBm                             |  |  |
| 6805B5    | PSTN: 1100 Hz tone transmission  | - N 6805B4                      | - 0.5N 6805B5 –3.5 (dB)                |  |
|           | level  | See Note 7.                     |  |  |
| 6805B6    | PSTN: 2100 Hz tone transmission  | - N6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B6 –3 (dB) |  |  |
|           | level  | See Note 7.                     |  |  |
| 6805B7    | PABX: TX level from the modem  | - dBm                           |  |  |
| 6805B8    | PABX: 1100 Hz tone transmission  | - N 6805B7                      | - 0.5N 6805B8 (dB)                     |  |
|           | level  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805B9    | PABX: 2100 Hz tone transmission  | - N 6805B7                      | - 0.5N 6805B9 (dB)                     |  |
|           | level  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805BD    | Modem turn-on level (incoming  | -37-0.5N                        |  |  |
|           | signal detection level)  | (dBm)                           |  |  |
| 6805BE to | Not used   | -                               | Do not change the settings.            |  |
| 6805C6    |  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805C7    | Bits 0 to 3 – Not used   |                                 |  |  |
|           | Bit 4 = V.34 protocol dump 0: Simple, 1: Detailed (default) Bits 5 to 7 – <b>Not used.</b> |                                 |  |  |
|           |  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805C8 to | Not used   | -                               | Do not change the settings.            |  |
| 6805D9    |  |                                 |  |  |
| 6805DA    | T.30 T1 timer  | 1 s                             |  |  |
| 6805E0    | Maximum wait time for post   | 0: 12 s                         | 1: Maximum wait time for post          |  |
| bit 3     | message  | 1: 30 s                         | message (EOP/EOM/MPS) can be           |  |
|           |  |                                 | changed to 30 s.                       |  |
|           |  |                                 | Change this bit to "1" if              |  |

| Address | Function   | Unit | Remarks                               |  |  |
|---------|--|------|---------------------------------------|--|--|
|         |  |      | communication errors occur frequently |  |  |
|         |  |      | during V.17 reception.                |  |  |
| 6805E3  | Bits 0 and 1 – DCV (TIP/RING) Voltage                                  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 0 = 3.1 V  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 1 = 3.2 V  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 1:1, Bit 0: 0 = 3.35 V   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 1:1, Bit 0: 1 = 3.5 V  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bits 2 and 3 – MINI (minimum loop electric current)                    |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 2:0, Bit 3: 0 = 10 mA  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 2:0, Bit 2: 1 = 12 mA  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 2:1, Bit 3: 0 = 14 mA  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 2:1, Bit 3: 1 = 16 mA  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bits 6 and 7 – ACIM (AC impedance)                                     |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 7:0, Bit 6: 0 Bit 5:0, Bit 4: 0= 600                               |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 7:0, Bit 6: 0 Bit 5:1, Bit 4: 0= TBR21                             |      |                                       |  |  |
| 6805E4  | Bit 0 – OHS (on hook speed)  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 0: OHS=0   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 1: OHS=1   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 1 – SQ (spark quench)  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 0: SQ=00   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 1: SQ=11   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 2 – RZ (call signal Impedance)                                     |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 0: RZ=0 (high)   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 1: RZ=1 (low)  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 3 – RT (call signal detection level)                               |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 0: RT=0 (low)  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 1: RT=1 (high)   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 4 – ILIM (DC limitation)   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 0: ILIM=0 (CTR 21)   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 1: ILIM=1 (other than CTR 21)  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 5 –FILTER  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 0: FILTER=0 (around 5Hz)   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | 1: FILTER=1 (around 200Hz)   |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bits 6 to 7 – Calibration in off hook state                            |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 6:0, Bit 7: 0 = off hook to ACAL:128 ms, off hook to MCAL: 1000 ms |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 6:1, Bit 7: 0 = off hook to ACAL:128 ms, off hook to MCAL: 500 ms  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 6:0, Bit 7: 1 = off hook to ACAL:128 ms (no MCAL)                  |      |                                       |  |  |
|         | Bit 6:1, Bit 7: 1 = off hook to ACAL:8 ms (no MCAL)                    |      |                                       |  |  |

| Address | Function                                      | Unit | Remarks |
|---------|---|------|---------|
| 6805E5  | Bits 0 to 6 - Not used                        |      |         |
|         | Bits 7 – Energy saving for DSP, COMBLK, SiDAA |      |         |
|         | 0: Does not save energy                       |      |         |
|         | 1: Saves energy                               |      |         |

#### NOTES

- 1. If a setting is not required, store FF in the address.
- 2. Italy and Belgium only

RAM address 68055E: the lower four bits have the following meaning.

Bit 2 - 1: International dial tone cadence detection enabled (Belgium)

Bit 1 - Not used

Bit 0 - 1: PSTN dial tone cadence detection enabled (Italy)

If bit 0 or bit 2 is set to 1, the functions of the following RAM addresses are changed.

680508 (if bit 0 = 1) or 680538 (if bit 2 = 1): tolerance for on or off state duration (%), and number of cycles required for detection, coded as in address 680533.

68050B (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053B (if bit 2 = 1): on time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

68050C (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053C (if bit 2 = 1): off time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

- 3. Pulse dial parameters (addresses 68054A to 68054F) are the values for 10 pps. If 20 pps is used, the machine automatically compensates.
- 4. The first ring may not be detected until 1 to 2.5 wavelengths after the time specified by this parameter.
- 5. The calculated level must be between 0 and 10.

The attenuation levels calculated from RAM data are:

High frequency tone:

- $-0.5 \times N_{680552}/_{680554}-3.5 dBm$
- $-0.5 \times N_{680555} dBm$

Low frequency tone:

- $-0.5 \times (N_{680552}/_{680554} + N_{680553}) -3.5 dBm$
- $-0.5 \text{ x} (N_{680555} + N_{680553}) \text{ dBm}$



- N<sub>680552</sub>, for example, means the value stored in address 680552(H)
- 6. 68054A: Europe Between Ds opening and Di opening, France Between Ds closing and Di opening

68054D: Europe - Between Ds closing and Di closing, France - Between Ds opening and Di closing

- 7. Tone signals which frequency is lower than 1500Hz (e.g., 800Hz tone for AI short protocol) refer to the setting at 6805B5h. Tones which frequency is higher than 1500Hz refer to the setting at 6805B6h.
- 8. 68054A, 68054D, 68054E: The actual inter-digit pause (pulse dial mode) is the sum of the period specified by the RAM addresses 68054A, 68054D, and 68054E.

### **Dedicated Transmission Parameters**

There are two sets of transmission parameters: Fax and E-mail

Each Quick Dial Key and Speed Dial Code has eight bytes of programmable parameters allocated to it. If transmissions to a particular machine often experience problems, store that terminal's fax number as a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and adjust the parameters allocated to that number.

The programming procedure will be explained first. Then, the eight bytes will be described.

### Programming Procedure

- 1. Set the bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 1.
- Enter Address Book Management mode ("Settings" icon > System Settings> Key Operator>
  Address Book Management).
- 3. Select the address book that you want to program.
- 4. For the fax parameter, select "Fax Dest.", for the E-mail parameter, select "E-mail", then press "Start". Make sure that the LED of the Start button lights green.
- 5. The settings for the switch 00 are now displayed. Press the bit number that you wish to change.
- 6. To scroll through the parameter switches, either:
- 7. Select the next switch: press "Next" or Select the previous switch: "Prev." until the correct switch is displayed. Then go back to step 6.
- 8. After the setting is changed, press "OK".
- 9. After finishing, reset bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 0.

#### **Parameters**

### Fax Parameters

The initial settings of the following fax parameters are all FF (H) - all the parameters are disabled.

#### Switch 00

### **FUNCTION AND COMMENTS**

ITU-T T1 time (for PSTN G3 mode)

If the connection time to a particular terminal is longer than the NCU parameter setting, adjust this byte. The T1 time is the value stored in this byte (in hex code), multiplied by 1 second.

### Range:

0 to 120 s (00h to 78h)

FFh - The local NCU parameter factory setting is used.

Do not program a value between 79h and FEh.

| Switch 01 |          |  |  |
|-----------|----------|--|--|
| No        | FUNCTION | COMMENTS   |  |
| 0-        | TX level | If communication with a particular remote terminal |  |

| 4  | Bit4            | Bit3          | Bit2     | Bit1     | Bit0     |            |
|----|-----------------|---------------|----------|----------|----------|------------|
|    | 0               | 0             | 0        | 0        | 0        | 0          |
|    | 0               | 0             | 0        | 0        | 1        | <b>–</b> 1 |
|    | 0               | 0             | 0        | 1        | 0        | -2         |
|    | 0               | 0             | 0        | 1        | 1        | -3         |
|    | 0               | 0             | 1        | 0        | 0        | -4         |
|    | <b>→</b>        | $\rightarrow$ | <b>→</b> | <b>→</b> | <b>→</b> | <b>→</b>   |
|    | 0               | 1             | 1        | 1        | 1        | <b>–15</b> |
|    | 1               | 1             | 1        | 1        | 1        | Disabled   |
| 5- | Cable equalizer |               |          |          |          |            |

often contains errors, the signal level may be inappropriate. Adjust the TX level for communications with that terminal until the results are better.

If the setting is "Disabled", the NCU parameter 01

If the setting is "Disabled", the NCU parameter 01 setting is used.

### **U** Note

 Do not use settings other than listed on the left.

Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = None

Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = Low

Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = Medium

Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = High

Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = Disabled

Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange when calling the number stored in this Quick/Speed Dial.

Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs.

Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc.

Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.



Do not use settings other than listed on the left

If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.

| Swi | Switch 02 |        |      |      |       |  |
|-----|-----------|--------|------|------|-------|--|
| No  | FUNCTION  |        |      |      |       | COMMENTS   |
| 0-  | Initia    | l TX m | odem | rate |       | If training with a particular remote terminal always takes too |
| 3   | Bit3      | Bit2   | Bit1 | Bit0 | bps   | long, the initial modem rate may be too high. Reduce the       |
|     | 0         | 0      | 0    | 0    | Not   | initial TX modem rate using these bits.                        |
|     |           |        |      |      | used  | For the settings 14.4 or kbps slower, Switch 04 bit 4 must     |
|     | 0         | 0      | 0    | 1    | 2400  | be changed to 0.   |
|     | 0         | 0      | 1    | 0    | 4800  | <b>♦</b> Note  |
|     | 0         | 0      | 1    | 1    | 7200  | Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If          |
|     | 0         | 1      | 0    | 0    | 9600  | the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is           |
|     | 0         | 1      | 0    | 1    | 12000 | used.  |
|     | 0         | 1      | 1    | 0    | 14400 |  |
|     | 0         | 1      | 1    | 1    | 16800 |  |
|     | 1         | 0      | 0    | 0    | 19200 |  |

### 4. Service Tables

|    | 1                        | 0 | 0 | 1      | 21600    |                             |
|----|--------------------------|---|---|--------|----------|-----------------------------|
|    | 1                        | 0 | 1 | 0      | 24000    |                             |
|    | 1                        | 0 | 1 | 1      | 26400    |                             |
|    | 1                        | 1 | 0 | 0      | 28800    |                             |
|    | 1                        | 1 | 0 | 1      | 31200    |                             |
|    | 1                        | 1 | 1 | 0      | 33600    |                             |
|    | 1                        | 1 | 1 | 1      | Disabled |                             |
|    | Other settings: Not used |   |   | ot use | d        |                             |
| 4- | - Not used               |   |   |        |          | Do not change the settings. |
| 7  |                          |   |   |        |          |                             |

| Swi | Switch 03                 |  |  |  |
|-----|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| No  | FUNCTION                  | COMMENTS   |  |  |
| 0-  | Inch-mm conversion        | If "inch only" is selected on the machine uses inch-based resolutions        |  |  |
| 1   | before TX                 | for scanning, the printed copy may be slightly distorted at the other        |  |  |
|     | Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0        | end if that machine uses mm-based resolutions.                               |  |  |
|     | = Inch-mm conversion      | If the setting is "Inch-mm conversion available ", Inch-mm conversion        |  |  |
|     | available                 | become effective to the special senders.                                     |  |  |
|     | Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Inch | If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.                |  |  |
|     | only                      |  |  |  |
|     | Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Not  |  |  |  |
|     | used                      |  |  |  |
|     | Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 =      |  |  |  |
|     | Disabled                  |  |  |  |
| 2-  | DIS/NSF detection         | (0, 1): Use this setting if echoes on the line are interfering with the set- |  |  |
| 3   | method                    | up protocol at the start of transmission. The machine will then wait for     |  |  |
|     | Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0        | the second DIS or NSF before sending DCS or NSS.                             |  |  |
|     | = First DIS or NSF        | If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.                |  |  |
|     | Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1        |  |  |  |
|     | = Second DIS or NSF       |  |  |  |
|     | Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Not  |  |  |  |
|     | used                      |  |  |  |
|     | Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 =      |  |  |  |
|     | Disabled                  |  |  |  |
| 4   | V.8 protocol              | If transmissions to a specific destination always end at a lower modem       |  |  |
|     | 0: Off                    | rate (14,400 bps or lower), disable V.8 protocol so as not to use V.34       |  |  |
|     | 1: Disabled               | protocol.  |  |  |
|     |                           | 0: V.34 communication will not be possible.                                  |  |  |

|    |                          | If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.        |  |  |
|----|--------------------------|--|--|--|
| 5  | Compression modes        | This bit determines the capabilities that are informed to the other  |  |  |
|    | available in transmit    | terminal during transmission.  |  |  |
|    | mode                     | If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.        |  |  |
|    | 0: MH only               |  |  |  |
|    | 1: Disabled              |  |  |  |
| 6- | ECM during               | For example, if ECM is switched on but is not wanted when sending to |  |  |
| 7  | transmission             | a particular terminal, use the (0, 0) setting.                       |  |  |
|    | Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 = Off | Note   |  |  |
|    | Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 = On  | V.8/V.34 protocol and JBIG compression are automatically             |  |  |
|    | Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 = Not | disabled if ECM is disabled.   |  |  |
|    | used                     | If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.        |  |  |
|    | Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 =     |  |  |  |
|    | Disabled                 |  |  |  |

| Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
|---|
| Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings) |

### E-mail Parameters

The initial settings of the following e-mail parameters are all "0" (all parameters disabled).

| Swi | tch 00                          |  |
|-----|---------------------------------|--|
| No  | FUNCTION                        | COMMENTS   |
| 0   | MH Compression mode for e-mail  | Switches MH compression on and off for files attached  |
|     | attachments                     | to e-mails for sending.                                |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off                  |  |
|     | 1: On                           |  |
| 1   | MR Compression mode for e-mail  | Switches MR compression on and off for files attached  |
|     | attachments                     | to e-mails for sending.                                |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off                  |  |
|     | 1: On                           |  |
| 2   | MMR Compression mode for e-mail | Switches MMR compression on and off for files attached |
|     | attachments                     | to e-mails for sending.                                |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off                  |  |
|     | 1: On                           |  |
| 3-  | Not used                        | Do not change these settings.                          |

### 4. Service Tables

| 6 |                                      |   |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| 7 | Designates the bits to reference for | The "0" selection (default) references the settings for |
|   | compression method of e-mail         | Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the    |
|   | attachments                          | selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.                          |
|   | 0: Registered (Bit 0 to 6)           |   |
|   | 1: No registration.                  |   |

| Swi | tch 01                           |  |
|-----|----------------------------------|--|
| No  | FUNCTION                         | COMMENTS   |
| 0   | Original width of e-mail         | Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A4.      |
|     | attachment: A4                   |  |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off                   |  |
|     | 1: On                            |  |
| 1   | Original width of e-mail         | Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as B4.      |
|     | attachment: B4                   |  |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off                   |  |
|     | 1: On                            |  |
| 2   | Original width of e-mail         | Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A3.      |
|     | attachment: A3                   |  |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off                   |  |
|     | 1: On                            |  |
| 3-  | Not used                         | Do not change these settings.                                |
| 6   |                                  |  |
| 7   | Designates the bits to reference | The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits |
|     | for original size of e-mail      | 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections   |
|     | attachments                      | of Bits 00, 01, 02.  |
|     | 0: Registered (Bit 0 to 6)       |  |
|     | 1: No registration.              |  |

| Swi | tch 02                    |  |
|-----|---------------------------|--|
| No  | FUNCTION                  | COMMENTS   |
| 0   | Line resolution of e-mail | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200   |
|     | attachment: 200 x 100     | x100.  |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off            |  |
|     | 1: On                     |  |
| 1   | Line resolution of e-mail | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x |
|     | attachment: 200 x 200     | 200.   |
|     | <b>0</b> : Off            |  |

|    | 1: On                            |  |
|----|----------------------------------|--|
|    | 1. 011                           |  |
| 2  | Line resolution of e-mail        | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x   |
|    | attachment: 200 x 400            | 400.   |
|    | <b>0</b> : Off                   |  |
|    | 1: On                            |  |
| 3  | Not used                         | Do not change these settings.                                |
| 4  | Line resolution of e-mail        | Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 400 x   |
|    | attachment: 400 x 400            | 400.   |
|    | <b>0</b> : Off                   |  |
|    | 1: On                            |  |
| 5- | Not used                         | Do not change these settings.                                |
| 6  |                                  |  |
| 7  | Designates the bits to reference | The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits |
|    | for original size of e-mail      | 00, 01, 02, 04 above. The "1" selection ignores the          |
|    | attachments                      | selections of Bits 00, 01, 02, 04.                           |
|    | 0: Registered (Bit 0 to 6)       |  |
|    | 1: No registration.              |  |

### Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings)

| Switch 04 |                   |  |  |
|-----------|-------------------|--|--|
| No        | FUNCTION          | COMMENTS   |  |
| 0         | Full mode address | If the other ends have the addresses, which have the full mode function  |  |
|           | selection         | flag ("0"), this machine determines them as full mode standard machines. |  |
|           | 0: Full mode      | This machine attaches the "demand of reception confirmation" to a        |  |
|           | address           | message when transmitting.   |  |
|           | 1: No full mode   | This machine updates the reception capability to the address book        |  |
|           | (simple mode)     | when receiving.  |  |
| 1-        | Not used          | Do not change these settings.  |  |
| 7         |                   |  |  |

| Swit | tch 05                                 |   |
|------|--|---|
| No   | FUNCTION                               | COMMENTS  |
| 0    | Directr transmission selection to SMTP | Allows or does not allow the direct transmission to |
|      | server                                 | SMTP server.  |
|      | 0: ON                                  |   |
|      | 1: OFF                                 |   |
| 1-   | Not used                               | Do not change these settings.                       |

### 4. Service Tables

**Switch 09 - Not used** (do not change the settings)

| 7   |  |
|-----|--|
|     |  |
| Swi | tch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Swi | tch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings) |
| Swi | tch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings) |

### **Service RAM Addresses**

### Service RAM Addresses



Do not change the settings that are marked as "Not used" or "Read only."

### 680001 to 680004(H) - ROM version (Read only)

680001(H) - Revision number (BCD)

680002(H) - Year (BCD)

680003(H) - Month (BCD)

680004(H) - Day (BCD)

**680006 to 680015(H)** - Machine's serial number (16 digits - ASCII)

**680016(H)** - Language code

0: Japanese, 1: UK English, 2: US English, 3: French, 4: German, 5: Spanish, 6: Italian, 7: Dutch, 8:

Swedish, 9: Norwegian, 10: Danish, 11: Finnish, 12: Czech, 13: Hungarian, 14: Polish, 15: Portuguese,

16: Russian, 17: Traditional Chinese, 18: Simplified Chinese, 19: Korean

**680018(H)** - Total program checksum (low)

**680019(H)** - Total program checksum (high)

680020 to 68003F(H) - System bit switches

680050 to 68005F(H) - Printer bit switches

680060 to 68007F(H) - Communication bit switches

680080 to 68008F(H) - G3 bit switches

680090 to 68009F(H) - G3-2 bit switches: Not used

**6800A0** to **6800AF(H)** - G3-3 bit switches: Not used

6800D0(H) - User parameter switch 00 (SWUER 00): Not used

6800D1(H) - User parameter switch 01 (SWUSR\_01): Not used

6800D2(H) - User parameter switch 02 (SWUSR 02)

Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Reception time printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 3: TSI print on received messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 4: Checkered mark printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Not used

#### Bit 7: Not used

### 6800D3(H) - User parameter switch 03 (SWUSR 03: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Memory storage report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Journal 0: Off, 1: On

### 6800D4(H) - User parameter switch 04 (SWUSR\_04: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Automatic communication failure report and transfer result report output 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 2 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: Indicates the parties 0: Not indicated, 1: Indicated

Bit 5: Include sender's name on reports 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports 0: Off, 1: On

### 6800D5(H) - User parameter switch 05 (SWUSR 05)

Bit 0: Substitute reception when the base copier is in an SC condition

0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

Bits 1 and 2: Condition for substitute RX when the machine cannot print messages (Paper end, toner end, jam, and during night mode)

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives all the fax messages.

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1 = The machine receives the fax messages with RTI or CSI.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives the fax messages with the same ID code.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 1 = The machine does not receive anything.

Bit 3: Not used

Bit 4: Not used

Bit 5: Just size printing 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Add paper display when a cassette is empty 0: Off, 1: On

### 6800D6(H) - User parameter switch 06 (SWUSR\_06)

Bit 0:

Bit 1: V8 protocol (G3-1: Super G3) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: V8 protocol (G3-2: Super G3) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: V8 protocol (G3-3: Super G3) 0: Off, 1: On

### 6800D7(H) - User parameter switch 07 (SWUSR\_07)

Bit 0 Ringing 0: Off, 1: On

Bit1: Automatic answering message 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: Parallel memory transmission 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Remote control 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

### 6800D8(H) - User parameter switch 08 (SWUSR\_08)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used.

Bit 2: Authorized reception

0: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.

1: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.

Bits 3 to 7: Not used.

6800D9(H) - User parameter switch 09 (SWUSR\_09): Not used

### 6800DA(H) - User parameter switch 10 (SWUSR\_0A)

Bits 0 to 2: Not used

Bit 3: Page reduction 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 and 5: Not used

Bit 6: Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to confirm the transmission results 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

### 6800DB(H) - User parameter switch 11 (SWUSR\_0B)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: White original detection 0: Off, 1: On (alarm and alert message on the LCD)

Bit 3: Receive rejection for 1300 Hz transmission 0: Off (receive), 1: On (not receive)

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

6800DC(H) - User parameter switch 12 (SWUSR\_0C): Not used

6800DD(H) - User parameter switch 13 (SWUSR\_0D): Not used

6800DE(H) - User parameter switch 14 (SWUSR 0E)

Bit 0: Message printout while the machine is in Night Printing mode 0: On, 1: Off

Bit 1: Maximum document length detection 0: Double letter, 1: Longer than double-letter (well log) – up

to 1,200 mm

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: Fax mode settings, such as resolution, before a mode key (Copy/Fax/Printer/Scanner) is pressed

0: Not cleared, 1: Cleared

Bits 4 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Not used

### 6800DF(H) - User parameter switch 15 (SWUSR 0F)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0, 1 and 2: Cassette for fax printout

#### 4. Service Tables

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 1st paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 2nd paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = 3rd paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 4th paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = LCT

Other settings Not used

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Using the cassette specified by bits 0, 1 and 2 above only 0: On, 1: Off

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

### 6800E0(H) - User parameter switch 16 (SWUSR\_10)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Paper size selection priority for an A4 size fax message when A4/LT size paper is not available. 0:

A3 has priority, 1: B4 has priority

Bits 3 to 7: Not used

### 6800E1(H) - User parameter switch 17 (SWUSR\_11)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Inclusion of the "Add" button when a sequence of Quick/Speed dials is selected for broadcasting

0: Not needed, 1: Needed

Bits 3 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Press "Start" key without an original when using the on hook dial or the external telephone,

0: displays "Cannot detect original size". 1: Receives fax messages.

### 6800E2(H) - User parameter switch 18 (SWUSR\_12)

Bit 0: TTI date 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: TTI sender 0: Off, 1: On
Bit 2: TTI file number 0: Off, 1: On
Bit 3: TTI page number 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 to 6: Not used Bit 7: Japan only

### 6800E3(H) - User parameter switch 19 (SWUSR 13)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Journal format

0: The Journal is separated into transmissions and receptions

1: The Journal is separated into G3-1, G3-2, and G3-3 communications

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: 90° image rotation during B5 portrait TX (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0:

Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Reduction of sample images on reports to 50% in the main scan and sub-scan directions. (This

switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Technician adjustment (printer switch 0E bits 3 and

4), 1: 50% reduction

Bit 5: Use of A5 size paper for reports (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Off, 1:

On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

### 6800E4(H) - User parameter switch 20 (SWUSR\_14)

Bit 0: Automatic printing of the LAN fax result report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used.

Bits 2 to 5: Store documents in memory, which could not be printed from PC fax (LAN fax) driver

| Bit 5    | Bit 4    | Bit 3    | Bit 2    | Setting  |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 0        | 0        | 0        | 0        | 0 min.   |
| 0        | 0        | 0        | 1        | 1 min.   |
| <b>→</b> | <b>→</b> | <b>→</b> | <b>→</b> | <b>→</b> |
| 1        | 1        | 1        | 0        | 14 min.  |
| 1        | 1        | 1        | 1        | 15 min.  |

Bits 6 and 7: Not used.

### 6800E5(H) - User parameter switch 21 (SWUSR\_15)

Bit 0: Print results of sending reception notice request message 0: Disabled (print only when error

occurs), 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: File format for forwarded folders 0: TIFF, 1: PDF

Bit 4: Transmit Journal by E-mail 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Network error display 0: Displayed, 1: Not displayed

Bit 7: Transmit error mail notification 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

### 6800E6(H) - User parameter switch 22 (SWUSR\_16)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bit 0: Dial tone detection (PSTN 1) 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800E7(H) - User parameter switch 23 (SWUSR\_17): Not used

6800E8(H) - User parameter switch 24 (SWUSR 18): Not used

6800E9(H) - User parameter switch 25 (SWUSR\_19)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Reception mode switch timer 0: Off, 1: On (switching Fax or Fax/Tel)

Bit 2: Mode priority switch 0: Fax first, 1: Tel first

Bit 3: Dial in function (Japan Only)

Bit 4: Do not Change this Bit.

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

6800EA(H) and 6800EB(H) - User parameter switches 26 and 27 (SWUSR\_1A and 1B): Not used

6800EC(H) - User parameter switch 28(SWUSR 1C): Not used

6800ED(H) - User parameter switch 29(SWUSR\_1D): Not used

6800EE(H) and 6800EF(H) - User parameter switches 30 and 31 (SWUSR\_1E and 1F): Not used 6800F0(H) - User parameter switch 32 (SWUSR\_20)

Bit 0: Quotation priority for a destination when there is no destination of the specified type

0: Paper output priority = Priority order: 1. IP-fax destination, 2. Fax Number, 3. E-mail address, 4. Folder

1: Electric putout order = Priority order: 1. E-mail address, 2. Folder, 3. IP-fax destination, 4. Fax number

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800F1(H) - User parameter switch 33 (SWUSR\_21): Not used

6800F2(H) - User parameter switch 34 (SWUSR 22)

Bit 0: Gatekeeper server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: SIP server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

6800F3(H) - User parameter switch 35 (SWUSR\_23)

Redial interval when sending a backup file

6800F4(H) - User parameter switch 36 (SWUSR 24)

Maximum number of redials when sending a backup file

6800F5(H) - User parameter switch 37 (SWUSR\_25)

Bit 0: Whether to stop sending a backup file if the destination folder becomes full while the machine is sending or waiting to send a fax or the backup file. 0: No, • 1: Yes

Bit 2 and 3: Backup file is printed along with the TX communication failure report when a backup file transmission failure occurs. 00: Do not print, 01: Print first page only, 10: Print whole file

Bit 4: Display the sender's information in the file name of documents that are forwarded to folder destinations. 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Limit the file names of documents that are forwarded to folder destinations to plain characters only. 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 6: When using the remote fax function, the sub-machine beeps to let you know when it has printed a received document (If you specify "On", the machine will beep according to the setting of [Panel Key Sound] under [System Settings].) 0: On, 1: Off

Bit 7: Not used

### 6800F6(H) - User parameter switch 38 (SWUSR 26)

Maximum number of transmissions the machine attempts before determining that a fax cannot be forwarded from a sender (including special senders) to a folder destination

### 6800F7(H) - User parameter switch 39 (SWUSR 27)

Interval (in minutes) between resend attempts after failing to forward a fax from a sender (including special senders) to a folder destination

### 6800F8(H) - User parameter switch 40 (SWUSR\_28)

Bit 0: When memory space is insufficient, the machine prints and then deletes the oldest faxes, creating memory space for storage of new faxes. 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1 to 7: Not used

### 6800FD(H) - User parameter switch 45 (SWUSR\_2D)

Bit 0 and 1:

Bit 2: File format for files transmitted to e-mail addresses and folders registered as forwarding, destinations of backup file transmission, receivers for Personal Box, or end receivers for Transfer Box.

0: PDF 1: PDF/A

Bit 3:

Bit 4 to 7: Not used

680100 to 68010F(H) - G4 Parameter Switches - Not used

**680110 to 68012F(H)** - G4 Internal Switches – Not used

680130 to 68016F(H) - Service Switches

680170 to 68017F(H) - IFAX Switches

680180 to 68018F(H) - IP-FAX Switches

680190 to 6801A3(H) - PSTN-1 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

**6801A4 to 6801B7(H)** - PSTN-2 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

**6801B8 to 6801CB(H)** - PSTN-3 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

**6801CF to 68020E(H)** - TTI 1 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

68020F to 68024E(H) - TTI 2

68024F to 68028E(H) - TTI 3

68028F to 6802CE(H) - TTI 4

6802CF to 68030E(H) - TTI 5

68030F to 68034E(H) - TTI 6

68034F to 68038E(H) - TTI 7

68038F to 6803CE(H) - TTI 8

6803CF to 68040E(H) - TTI 9

68040F to 68044E(H) - TTI 10



• If the number of characters is less than the maximum (20 for RTI, 32 for TTI), add a stop code (00[H]) after the last character.

### 68044F(H)

Printing format for TTI 1

0: DOM (Japan), 1:EXP (Export)

### 680450(H)

Printing format for TTI 2

0: DOM, 1: EXP

680451(H)

### 4. Service Tables

Printing format for TTI 3

0: DOM, 1:EXP

### 680452(H)

Printing format for TTI 4

0: DOM, 1:EXP

### 680453(H)

Printing format for TTI 5

0: DOM, 1:EXP

### 680454(H)

Printing format for TTI 6

0: DOM, 1:EXP

### 680455(H)

Printing format for TTI 7

0: DOM, 1:EXP

### 680456(H)

Printing format for TTI 8

0: DOM, 1:EXP

### 680457(H)

Printing format for TTI 9

0: DOM, 1:EXP

### 680458(H)

Printing format for TTI 10

0: DOM, 1: EXP

**680459 to 68046C(H)** - PSTN-1 CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

**68046D to 680480(H)** - PSTN-2 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII)

**680481 to 680494(H)** - PSTN-3 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII)

**680495(H)** - Number of PSTN-1 CSI characters (Hex)

680496(H) - Number of PSTN-2 CSI characters (Hex)

**680497(H)** - Number of PSTN-3 CSI characters (Hex)

6804C6(H) - Memory Lock ID (BCD)

**6804D2 to 6804D9(H)** - Last power off time (Read only)

6804D2(H) - 01(H) - 24-hour clock, 00(H) - 12-hour clock (AM), 02(H) - 12-hour clock (PM)

6804D3(H) - Year (BCD)

6804D4(H) - Month (BCD)

6804D5(H) - Day (BCD)

6804D6 (H) - Hour

6804D7 (H) - Minute

6804D8(H) - Second

6804D8 (H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, ///, 06: Sunday

```
6804E6(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)
Bit 0: Page Memory
                       0: Not installed, 1: Installed
Bit 1: SAF Memory (4M) 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
Bit 2: SAF Memory
                       0: Not installed, 1: Installed
Bits 3 to 7; Not used
6804E7(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)
Bits 0 to 3: Not used
Bit 4: G3-2 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
Bit 5: G3-3 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
Bit 6 and 7: Not used
6804EE(H) - Machine code (Check ram 3)
680500(H) - Start address of G3 table for G3-1
680600(H) - Start address of G3 table for G3-2
680700(H) - Start address of G3 table for G3-3
680800 to 68081F(H) - Service station's fax number (SP3-101)
680820 to 680829(H) - Own fax PABX extension number - Not used
68082A to 680833(H) - Own fax number (PSTN) - Not used
680834 to 680847(H) - Own fax number (ISDN G4) - Not used
680848 to 680853(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G3) - Not used
680854 to 68085F(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G3) - Not used
680860 to 68086B(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G4) - Not used
68086C to 680877(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G4) - Not used
6808A0 to 6808B7(H) - G4TID registered information (Max.24 characters - ASCII)
6808B8 to 6808CB(H) - ISDN CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII)
6808CC(H) - Number of ISDN CSI characters (Hex)
6808D1 to 6808D4(H) - ISDN G3 sub address registered information
6808D5 to 6808D8(H) - G4 sub address registered information
6808DE to 6808E2 – Option G3 board (G3-2) ROM information (Read only)
6808DE(H) - Suffix (BCD)
6808DF(H) - Version (BCD)
6808E0(H) - Year (BCD)
6808E1(H) - Month (BCD)
6808E2(H) - Day (BCD)
6808E3 to 6808E7 – Option G3 board (G3-3) ROM information (Read only)
6808E3(H) - Suffix (BCD)
6808E4(H) - Version (BCD)
6808E5(H) - Year (BCD)
6808E6(H) - Month (BCD)
6808E7(H) - Day (BCD)
```

```
6808E8(H) - G3-1 Modem ROM version (Read only)
6808EA(H) - G3-2 Modem ROM version (Read only)
6808EC(H) - G3-3 Modem ROM version (Read only)
6808F8(H) - Number of multiple sets print (Read only)
68094E(H) - Time for economy transmission (Not used)
68094F(H) - Time for economy transmission (Not used)
68096A(H) - Transmission monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
68096B(H) - Reception monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
68096C(H) - On-hook monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
68096D(H) - Dialing monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
68096E(H) - Buzzer volume 00 - 07(H)
68096F(H) - Beeper volume
                             00 - 07(H)
680980(H) - Machine code (Check ram 4)
680982(H) - Machine serial number (ASCII)
687178 to 68717B(H) - Transmission counter (Max.24 characters - ASCII)
68717C to 68717F(H) - Reception counter (Max.24 characters - ASCII)
6871E8 to 6871EB(H) - Mail transmission counter (Max.24 characters - ASCII)
6871EC to 6871EF(H) - Mai reception counter (Max.24 characters - ASCII)
6A6DEE(H) to 6A70ED(H) - SIP server address (Read only)
6A6DEE(H) - Proxy server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A6E6E(H) - Proxy server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A6EEE(H) - Redirect server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A6F6E(H) - Redirect server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A6FEE(H) - Registrar server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A706E(H) - Registrar server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A70EE(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A716E(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A71EE(H) - Alias Number (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A726E(H) - SIP user name (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A72EE(H) - SIP digest authentication password (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A736E(H) - Gateway address information (Max. 7100 characters - ASCII)
6A8F2A(H) - NGN initial setting method 0: Simple, 1: Manual
6A8F2B(H) - SIP digest authentication user name (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A8FAB(H) - NGN-SIP domain name (Max. 64 characters - ASCII)
6A8FEB(H) - NGN-home gateway address (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
6A906C(H) - Stand-by port number for H.323 connection
6A906E(H) - Stand-by port number for SIP connection
6A9070(H) - RAS port number
6A9072(H) - Gatekeeper port number
```

6A9074(H) - Port number of data waiting for T.38

6A9076(H) - Port number of SIP server

6A9078(H) - Priority for SIP and H.323 0: H.323, 1: SIP

6A9079(H) - SIP function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

6A907A(H) - H.323 function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

6A907B(H) - SIP digest authentication function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

6B3AE4(H) - 6B3B04 (H) - Dial tone detection parameter (Max. 11 x 3 lines)

This initializes following order. [0x04, 0x40, 0x03, 0x60, 0x64, 0xf4, 0x01,0x64, 0x04, 0xc8, 0x00]

**6B3AE4(H)** – Dial tone detection frequency – Upper limit (High)

Defaults: NA: 06, EU: 06, ASIA: 06

**6B3AE5(H)** – Dial tone detection frequency – Upper Limit (Low)

Defaults: NA: 50, EU: 50, ASIA: 50

**6B3AE6(H)** – Dial tone detection frequency – Lower Limit (High)

Defaults: NA: 03, EU: 02, ASIA: 02

**6B3AE7(H)** – Dial tone detection frequency – Lower Limit (Low)

Defaults: NA: 60, EU: 90, ASIA: 90

**6B3AE8(H)** –Dial tone detection waiting time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 64, EU 64, ASIA: 64

**6B3AE9 to 6B3AEA** – Dial tone detection monitoring time (20 ms)

#### Defaults

| Area | 6B35A9 | 6B35AA |
|------|--------|--------|
| NA   | F4     | 01     |
| EU   | F4     | 01     |
| ASIA | F4     | 01     |

**6B3AEB(H)** – Dial tone detect judge time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 64, EU: 1B, ASIA: 32

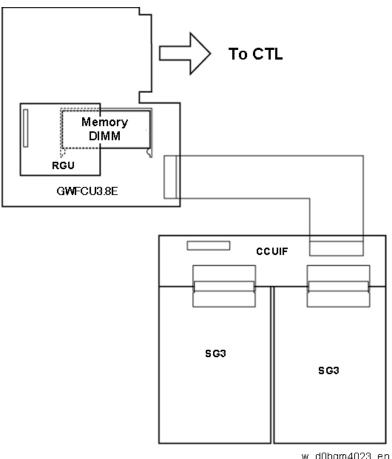
**6B3AEC(H)** – Dial tone disconnect permission time (20 ms)

Defaults: NA: 11, EU: 0F, ASIA: 11

# **5. Detailed Section Descriptions**

### **Overview**

### Overview



w\_d0bqm4023\_en

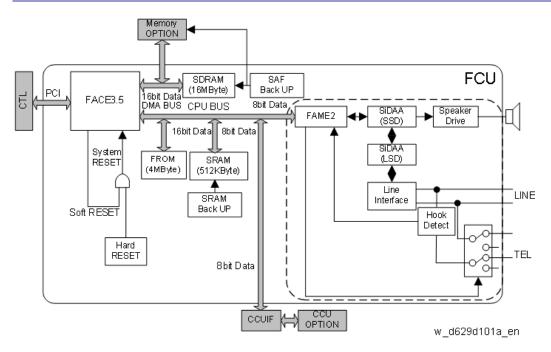
Together with the controller board, the FCU controls all the fax communications and fax features. The FCU also contains the ROM, SRAM and NCU circuits.

### **Fax Options**

- Extra G3 Interface option This provides one more analog line interface. This allows full dual access. Two extra G3 interface options can be installed.
- Memory Expansion This expands the SAF memory and the page memory (used for image rotation); without this expansion, the page memory is not big enough for image rotation at 400 dpi, so transmission at 400 dpi is not possible.

### **Boards**

### **FCU**



The FCU (Facsimile Control Unit) controls fax communications, the video interface to the base copier's engine, and all the fax options.

### **FACE3.8 (Fax Application Control Engine)**

- CPU
- Data compression and reconstruction (DCR)
- DMA control
- Clock generation
- DRAM backup control

### Modem (FAME2)

V.34, V33, V17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21, and V.8

#### **DRAM**

- The 16 MB of DRAM is shared as follows.
  - SAF memory: 4MB
  - Working memory: 4MB
  - Page memory: 8MB
  - The SAF memory is backed up by a rechargeable battery.

### **ROM**

4MB flash ROMs for system software storage

### **SRAM**

• The 512 KB SRAM for system and user parameter storage is backed up by a lithium battery.

### **Memory Back-up**

A rechargeable battery backs up the SAF memory (DRAM) for 12 hours.

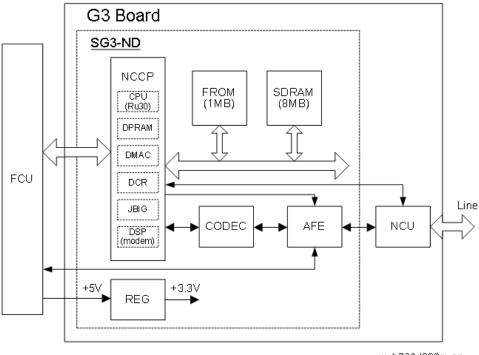
### 5.Detailed Section Descriptions

 A lithium battery backs up the system parameters and programmed items in the SRAM, in case the base copier's main switch is turned off.

#### **Switches**

| Item | Description                              |  |
|------|--|--|
| SW1  | Switches the SRAM backup battery on/off. |  |

### SG3 Board



w\_b766d903a\_en

The SG3 board allows up to three simultaneous communications when used in combination with the FCU and optional G3 boards. The NCU is on the same board as the common SG-3 board. This makes the total board structure smaller. But, the specifications of the SG3 board do not change.

### **NCCP (New Communication Control Processor)**

- Controls the SG3 board.
- CPU (RU30)
- DPRAM (Dual Port RAM): Handshaking with the FCU is done through this block.
- DMA controller
- JBIG
- DSP V34 modem (RL5T892): Includes the DTMF Receiver function
- DCR for MH, MR, MMR, and JBIG compression and decompression

### **FROM**

• 1Mbyte flash ROM for SG3 software storage and modem software storage

### SDRAM

4Mbyte DRAM shared between ECM buffer, line buffer, and working memory

### **AFE (Analog Front End)**

160

• Analog processing

### CODEC (COder-DECoder)

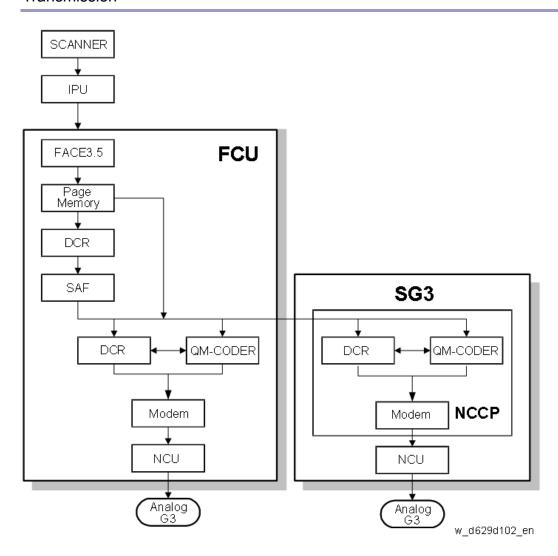
• A/D & D/A conversions for modem

### **REG**

• Generates +3.3 V from the +5V from the FCU

### Video Data Path

### **Transmission**



### Memory Transmission and Parallel Memory Transmission

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution in inch format. The IPU processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.



 When scanning a fax original, the IPU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then, the FCU converts the data to mm format, and compresses the data in MMR or raw format to store it in the SAF memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in page memory before compression.

At the time of transmission, the FCU decompresses the stored data, then re-compresses and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

### Immediate Transmission

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the resolution agreed with the receiving terminal. The IPU video processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.



 When scanning a fax original, the IPU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then the FCU stores the data in page memory, and compresses the data for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

#### JBIG Transmission

### **Memory transmission**

If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the DCR to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.

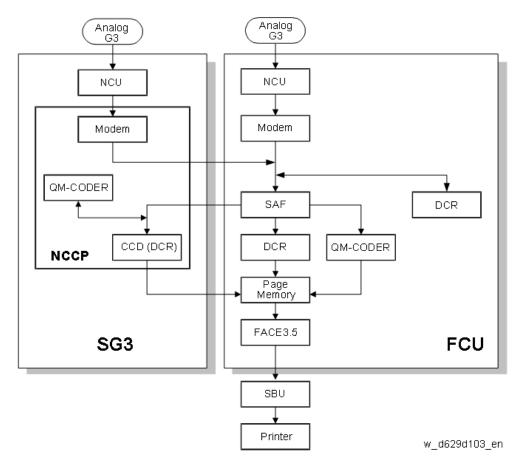
### Immediate transmission

If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the page memory to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.

### Adjustments

Priority for the line used for G3 transmissions (PSTN 1/PSTN 2 or 3): System switch 16 bit 1

### Reception



First, the FCU stores the incoming data from either an analog line to the SAF memory. (The data goes to the FACE3 at the same time, and is checked for error lines/frames.)

The FCU then decompresses the data and transfers it to page memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory. The data is transferred to the IPU.

If the optional G3 unit is installed, the line that the message comes in on depends on the telephone number dialed by the other party (the optional G3 unit has a different telephone number from the main fax board).

### **JBIG Reception**

When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-1 (the standard analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER for decompression. Then the data is stored in the page memory, and transferred to the IPU.

When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-2 (optional extra analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER on the SG3 board for decompression.

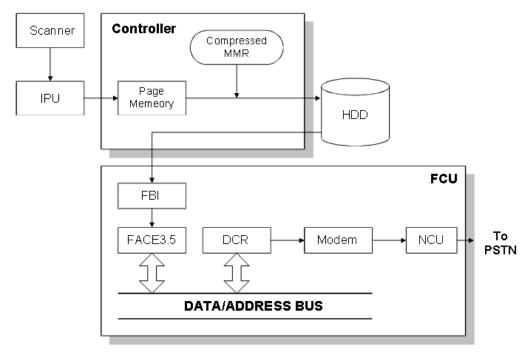
### **Fax Communication Features**

### Multi-port

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, communication can take place at the same time through the two or three lines at once.

| Option                           | Available Line Type | Available protocol Combinations |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Standard only                    | PSTN                | G3                              |
| Extra G3 Interface Unit (single) | PSTN + PSTN         | G3 + G3                         |
| Extra G3 Interface Unit (double) | PSTN + PSTN +PSTN   | G3 + G3 +G3                     |

#### **Document Server**



w\_d629d104\_en

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution. The IPU video processes the data and transfers it to the controller board.

Then the controller stores the data in the page memory for the copier function, and compresses the data in MMR (by software) to store it in the HDD. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory before compression.

For transmission, the stored image data is transferred to the FCU. The FCU decompresses the image data, then recompresses and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

The documents can be stored in the HDD (Document Server) from the fax application. The stored documents in the document sever can be used for the fax transmission in many times. More than one document and the scanned document can be combined into one file and then the file can be

### 5.Detailed Section Descriptions

### transmitted.

- When using the document server, the SAF memory is not used.
- The document is compressed with MMR and stored.
- Up to 9,000 pages can be stored (1 file: Up to 1,000 pages) from the fax application.
- Only stored documents from the fax application can be transmitted.
- Scanned documents are given a name automatically, such as "FAX001". But it is possible to change the file name, user name and password.
- Up to 30 files can be selected at once.



- The compression method of the fax application is different from the copy application. The storing time is longer than the copier storing.
- When selecting "Print 1st page", the stored document will be reduced to A4 size.

### Internet Mail Communication

### Mail Transmission

### T.37 simple and full modes

This machine supports T.37 full mode. (ITU-T Recommendation, RFC2532). The difference between T.37 simple mode and full mode is as follows.

| Function       | T.37 Simple Mode  | T.37 Full Mode                                  |
|----------------|-------------------|---|
| Resolution     | 200 x 100         | 200 x100  |
|                | 200 x 200         | 200 x 200                                       |
|                |                   | 200 x 400                                       |
|                |                   | 400 x 400 (if available)                        |
| RX Paper Width | A4                | A4, B4, A3                                      |
| RX Data        | MH                | MH (default), MR, MMR,                          |
| Compression    |                   |   |
| Method         |                   |   |
| Signals        | Image data        | Image data transmission, exchange of capability |
|                | transmission only | information between the two terminals, and      |
|                |                   | acknowledgement of receipt of fax messages      |

### **Data Formats**

The scanned data is converted into a TIFF-F formatted file.

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

| Field    | Content                         |  |
|----------|---------------------------------|--|
| From     | Mail address of the sender      |  |
| Reply To | Destination requested for reply |  |
| То       | Mail address of the destination |  |

| Field            | Content   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| Всс              | Backup mail address   |  |
| Subject          | From CSI or RTI (Fax Message No. xxxx)                                  |  |
| Content Type     | Multipart/mixed   |  |
|                  | Attached files: image/tiff  |  |
| Content Transfer | Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable                                 |  |
| Encoding         |   |  |
| Message Body     | MIME-converted TIFF-F (MIME standards specify how files are attached to |  |
|                  | e-mail messages)  |  |

### **Direct SMTP Transmission**

Internet Fax documents can be sent directly to their destinations without going through the SMTP server. (Internet Faxes normally transmit via the SMTP server.)

### For example:

| e-mail address:      | gts@ricoh.co.jp |  |
|----------------------|-----------------|--|
| SMTP server address: | gts.abcd.com    |  |

In this case, this feature destination e-mail address (gts@ricoh.co.jp) is read as the SMTP server address "gts.abcd.com", and the transmissions bypass the SMTP server. This leads to decrease the server load and to reduce the time lag during transferring the mail.

- Requirements for destination server:
  - Supports with Internet FAX (as a destination of Internet FAX)
  - Can receive mails (as a destination of mail)
  - Is installed in the same LAN as this machine
  - Supports with the SMTP mail reception, and the reception protocol is set to SMTP



- Set the port number for [SMTP server] to "25" to enable this feature.
- If the sender server sends an Internet FAX or a mail using this feature, the SMTP authentication is disabled even if the server sets it.
- Using this feature, error notification mail will not be sent even if the mail is not properly received.
- Also, error mail will not be sent even if the mail is not sent properly.
- This feature refers to A records (not supported with MX records).

### **Selectable Options**

These options are available for selection:

- With the default settings, the scan resolution can be either standard or detail. Inch-mm conversion before TX depends on IFAX SW01 Bit 7. Detail resolution will be used if Super Fine resolution is selected, unless Fine resolution is enabled with IFAX SW01.
- The requirements for originals (document size, scan width, and memory capacity) are the same as

for G3 fax memory TX.

- The default compression is TIFF-F format.
- IFAX SW00: Acceptable paper widths for sending
- IFAX SW09: Maximum number of attempts to the same destination

### **Secure Internet Transmission**

- SMTP Authentication:
  - Settings > Machine Features Settings > System Settings> File Transfer> SMTP Authentication
- POP Before SMTP:
  - Settings > Machine Features Settings > System Settings> File Transfer> POP Before SMTP

#### Mail Reception

### **Three Types**

This machine supports three types of e-mail reception:

- POP3 (Post Office Protocol Ver. 3.)
- IMAP4 (Internet Messaging Access Protocol)
- SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)



For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC –
 Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Mail Reception

### POP3/IMAP4 Mail Reception Procedure

The machine automatically picks up e-mail from the server at an interval which is adjustable in the range 2 to 1440 min. in 1-minute steps:

Settings> Machine Features Settings > System Settings> File Transfer> E-mail Reception Interval

### **SMTP Reception**

- 1. The IFAX must be registered as an SMTP server in the MX record of the DNS server, and the address of the received mail must specify the IFAX.
- 2. To enable SMTP reception: Settings> Machine Features Settings> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol
  - Even if the MX record on the DNS server includes the IFAX, mail cannot be received with SMTP until SMTP reception is enabled:
  - However, if SMTP reception is selected and the machine is not registered in the MX record of the DNS server, then either IMAP4 or POP3 is used, depending on the "Setting" menu: Settings> Machine Features Settings> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol



- An error will be issued and error mail will be sent to the mail source when the reception
  protocol is not set to SMTP even If you configure to enable SMTP reception in the DNS server.
- If the received mail contains error, the reception operation is stopped, the mail is discarded

- and error report is output. Error mail is also sent to the mail source.
- When a mail is received from SMTP server during sending a mail in the machine, the SMTP server will give a "Busy" response. The SMTP server will usually try to send the mail again later until the time-out is reached.
- This feature cannot be used with the POP server.

### Mail Delivery Conditions: Transferring Mail Received With SMTP

- **1.** The machine must be set up for SMTP mail delivery:
  - Settings> Machine Features Settings > Facsimile Settings> Reception Settings> SMTP RX
     File Delivery Settings
- 2. If the user wishes to limit this feature so that the machine will only deliver mail from designated senders, the machine's "Auth. E-mail RX" feature must be set (Settings > Machine Features Settings > Facsimile Settings> Reception Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings).
- 3. If the "SMTP RX File Delivery Setting" is set to "Off" to prohibit SMTP receiving, and if there is mail designated for delivery, then the machine responds with an error. (Settings> Machine Features Settings> Facsimile Settings> Reception Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings)
- **4.** If the quick dial, speed dial, or group dial entry is incorrect, the mail transmission is lost, and the IFAX issues an error to the SMTP server and outputs an error report.

#### Auth. E-mail RX

In order to limit access to mail delivery with IFAX, the addresses of senders must be limited using the Access Limit Entry. Only one entry can be registered.

### **1.** Access Limit Entry

For example, to limit access to @IFAX.ricoh.co.jp:

| gts@IFAX.ricoh.co.jp | Matches and is delivered.            |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| gts@IFAX.abcde.co.jp | Does not match and is not delivered. |
| IFAX@ricoh.co.jp     | Does not match and is not delivered. |

### 2. Conditions

- The length of the Access Limit Entry is limited to 127 characters.
- If the Access Limit Entry address and the mail address of the incoming mail do not match, the
  incoming mail is discarded and not delivered, and the SMTP server responds with an error.
   However, in this case an error report is not output.
- If the Access Limit Entry address is not registered, and if the incoming mail specifies a delivery destination, then the mail is delivered unconditionally.

### Handling Mail Reception Errors

#### **Abnormal files**

When an error of this type occurs, the machine stops receiving and commands the server to erase the message. Then the machine prints an error report and sends information about the error by e-mail to

the sender address (specified in the "From" or "Reply-to" field of the message). If there is an incomplete received message in the machine memory, it will be erased.

The machine prints an error message when it fails to send the receive error notification after a certain number of attempts.

The following types of files are judged to be abnormal if one or more of the following are detected:

1. Unsupported MIME headers.

Supported types of MIME header

| Header            | Supported Types   |
|-------------------|---|
| Content-Type      | Multipart/mixed, text/plain, message/rfc822 Image/tiff        |
| Charset           | US-ASCII, ISO 8859 X. Other types cannot be handled, and some |
|                   | garbage may appear in the data.                               |
| Content-Transfer- | Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable                       |
| Encoding          |   |

- 2. MIME decoding errors
- 3. File format not recognized as TIFF-F format
- 4. Resolution, document size, or compression type cannot be accepted

### Remaining SAF capacity error

The machine calls the server but does not receive e-mail if the remaining SAF capacity is less than a certain value (the value depends on IFAX Switch 08. The e-mail will be received when the SAF capacity increases (for example, after substitute reception files have been printed). The error handling method for this type of error is the same as for "Abnormal files".

If the capacity of the SAF memory drops to zero during reception, the machine operates in the same way as when receiving an abnormal file (refer to "Abnormal files" above).

### Secure Internet Reception

To enable password encryption and higher level security: Settings > Machine Features Settings > System Settings> File Transfer> POP3/IMAP4 Settings> Encryption (set to "On")

Transfer Request: Request By Mail

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Transfer Request

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

| Field        | Content  |
|--------------|--|
| From         | E-mail address of the requesting terminal      |
| То           | Destination address (Transfer Station address) |
| Всс          | Backup mail address                            |
| Subject      | From TSI (Fax Message No. xxxx)                |
| Content-Type | Multipart/mixed                                |

| Field                     | Content   |
|---------------------------|---|
|                           | Text/Plain (for a text part), image/tiff (for attached files) |
| Content-Transfer-Encoding | Base 64, 7-Bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable                       |
| Mail body (text part)     | RELAY-ID-: xxxx (xxxx: 4 digits for an ID code)               |
|                           | RELAY: #01#*X#**01  |
| Message body              | MIME-converted TIFF-F.  |

### E-Mail Options (Sub TX Mode)

The following features are available as options for mail sending: entering a subject, designating the level of importance, confirming reception of the mail.

### **Subject and Level of Importance**

You can enter a subject message with: TX Mode> Subject

The Subject entry for the mail being sent is limited to 128 characters. The subject can also be prefixed with a "Confidential", "Urgent", "Please phone" or "Copy to corres. Section" notation.

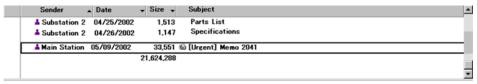
- How the Subject Differs According to Mail Type -

| Mail Type              | Item | Item 2             |                    | Item 3                 |
|------------------------|------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Subject Entry          |      | Entry Condition    |                    | Fax Message No.        |
| No Subject Entry       |      | 1. "CSI" ("RTI")   |                    | +                      |
|                        |      | 2. "RTI"           | CSI not registered | File No.               |
|                        |      | 3. "CSI"           | RTI not registered |                        |
|                        |      | 4. None            | CSI, RTI not       |                        |
|                        |      |                    | registered         |                        |
| Confirmation of        | From | 1. "CSI" ("RTI")   |                    | Normal:                |
| Reception              |      | 2. "RTI"           | CSI not registered | Return Receipt         |
|                        |      |                    |                    | (dispatched).          |
|                        |      |                    |                    | You can select         |
|                        |      |                    |                    | "displayed" with IFAX  |
|                        |      |                    |                    | SW02 Bits 2 and 3.     |
|                        |      | 3. "CSI"           | RTI not registered | Error:                 |
|                        |      | 4. None            | CSI, RTI not       | Return Receipt         |
|                        |      |                    | registered         | (processed/error)      |
| Mail delivery, memory  | From | RTI or CSI of the  | Mail delivery      | Fax Message No. + File |
| transfer, SMTP         |      | station designated |                    | Number                 |
| receiving and delivery |      | for delivery       |                    |                        |
|                        |      | RTI or CSI of      | Mail sending from  |                        |
|                        |      | sender             | G3 memory          |                        |
|                        |      | Mail address of    | Memory sending     |                        |

| Mail Type               | Item | Item 2                                |                   | Item 3 |
|-------------------------|------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|
|                         | 1    |                                       |                   |        |
|                         |      | sender                                |                   |        |
|                         |      | Mail address of                       | SMTP receiving    |        |
|                         |      | sender                                | and delivery (Off |        |
|                         |      |                                       | Ramp Gateway)     |        |
| Mail error notification |      | Error Message No. xxxx From CSI (RTI) |                   |        |

Items 1, 2, and 3 in the table above are in the Subject.

- Subjects Displayed on the PC -



b766d907

### E-mail Messages

After entering the subject, you can enter a message with: TX Mode> Text

An e-mail message (up to 5 lines) can be pre-registered with the "Settings" menu

"Settings" icon > System Settings> File Transfer> Program/Change/Delete E-mail Message

- Limitations on Entries -

| Item            | Maximum       |
|-----------------|---------------|
| Number of Lines | 5 lines       |
| Line Length     | 80 characters |
| Name Length     | 20 characters |

### **Message Disposition Notification (MDN)**

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – E-mail Options

The network system administrator can confirm whether a sent mail has been received correctly or not. This confirmation is done in four steps.

- Send request for confirmation of mail reception. To enable or disable this request (known as MDN):
   TX Mode> Reception Notice
- 2. Mail reception (receive confirmation request)
- 3. Send confirmation of mail reception
- 4. Receive confirmation of mail reception

The other party's machine will not respond to the request unless the two conditions below are met:

- The other party's machine must be set up to respond to the confirmation request.
- The other party's machine must support MDN (Message Disposition Notification).
- Setting up the Receiving Party -

The receiving party will respond to the confirmation request if:

- 1. The "Disposition Notification To" field is in the received mail header (automatically inserted in the 4th line in the upper table on the previous page, if MDN is enabled), and
- 2. Sending the disposition notification must be enabled (User Parameter Setting SW21 (15 [H]) Bit 1 for this model). The content of the response is as follows:

| Normal reception:    | "Return Receipt (dispatched)" in the Subject line      |
|----------------------|--|
| IFAX SW02 (Bit 2, 3) | "Return Receipt (displayed)" in the Subject line       |
| Error:               | "Return Receipt (processed/error)" in the Subject line |

### **Handling Reports**

- Sending a Request for a Return Receipt by Mail -

After the mail sender transmits a request for a return receipt, the mail sender's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and a "Q" in the Mode column.

- Mail Receipt (Request for Receipt Confirmation) and Sending Mail Receipt Response -

After the mail receiver sends a response to the request for a return receipt, the mail receiver's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and an "A" in the Mode column.

- Receiving the Return Receipt Mail -
- After the mail sender receives a return receipt, the information in the mail sender's journal about the receipt request is replaced, i.e. the journal is annotated with "OK" in the Result column.
- When the return receipt reports an error, the journal is annotated with an "E" in the Result column.
- The arrival of the return receipt is not recorded in the journal as a separate communication. Its arrival is only reported by the presence of "OK" or "E" in the Result column.
- If the mail address used by the sender specifies a mailing list (i.e., a Group destination; the machine sends the mail to more than one location. See "How to set up Mail Delivery"), the Result column of the Journal is updated every time a return receipt is received. For example, if the mailing list was to 5 destinations, the Result column indicates the result of the communication with the 5th destination only. The results of the communications to the first 4 destinations are not shown. Exceptions:

If one of the communications had an error, the Result column will indicate E, even if subsequent communications were OK.

If two of the communications had an error, the Journal will indicate the destination for the first error only.

- Report Sample -

| DATE   | TIME  | ADDRESS MODE TIME                           | PAGE | RESULT |
|--------|-------|---|------|--------|
| MAY. 5 | 10:15 | fuser_01@dom1g. ricoh. co. Mail SM 0'09"    | 2    |        |
|        | 10:16 | fuser_01@dom1g. ricoh. co. Mail SMQ 0'05"   | 1    |        |
|        | 10:17 | s_tadashi@dom1g. ricoh. co. Mail SMQ 0'09"  | 2    | OK     |
|        | 10:19 | m_masataka@dom1g. ricoh. co. Mail SMA 0'05" | 1    |        |
|        |       |   |      |        |

b771d506

### **IP-Fax**

### What is IP-FAX?

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – IP-FAX

### T.38 Packet Format

TCP is selected by default for this machine, but you can change this to UDP with IPFAX SW 00 Bit 1.

### **UDP Related Switches**

|     | IP-Fax Switch 01 |         |       |        |       |   |
|-----|------------------|---------|-------|--------|-------|---|
| No. | No. Function     |         |       | ion    |       | Comments  |
| 0-3 | Sele             | ct IP I | FAX D | elay l | _evel | Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many       |
|     | Bit              | Bit     | Bit   | Bit    | Level | transmission errors are occurring on the network.               |
|     | 3                | 2       | 1     | 0      |       | If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the |
|     | 0                | 0       | 0     | 0      | 0     | T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of  |
|     | 0                | 0       | 0     | 1      | 1     | more lost packets.  |
|     | 0                | 0       | 1     | 0      | 2     | If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant        |
|     | 0                | 0       | 1     | 1      | 3     | packets.  |
|     |                  |         |       |        |       | Level 1~2: 3 Redundant packets                                  |
|     |                  |         |       |        |       | Level 3: 4 Redundant packets                                    |

### Settings

User parameter switch 34 (22[H]), bit 0

IP-Fax Gate Keeper usage, 0: No, 1: Yes

IP Fax Switches: Various IP-FAX settings (see the bit switch table)

# 6. Specifications

# **Fax Transmissions and Reception**

This function may not be used depending on the telephone line or area status

• To connect the machine to the network, use a LAN cable supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 10BASE-T. The length of the usable cable is up to 100 m.

| Item             | Specifications   |
|------------------|--|
| Standard         | G3   |
| Resolution:      | 8 x 3.85 lines/mm (Standard)   |
|                  | 8 x 7.7 lines/mm (Detail)  |
|                  | 8 x 15.4 line/mm (Fine) See Note1  |
|                  | 16 x15.4 line/mm (Super Fine) See Note 1   |
|                  | 200 x 100 dpi (Standard)   |
|                  | 200 x 200 dpi (Detail)   |
|                  | 400 x 400 dpi (Super Fine) See Note 1  |
|                  | <b>♦</b> Note  |
|                  | Optional Expansion Memory required   |
| Transmission     | 3 s at 28800 bps; Measured with G3 ECM using memory for an ITU-T #1 test         |
| Time:            | document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution*1                               |
| Data             | MH, MR, MMR, JBIG*2  |
| Compression:     |  |
| Maximum original | Standard: A3 Landscape or 11 × 17 Landscape                                      |
| size             | Custom (w × h): 297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)                              |
| Maximum          | 297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)  |
| scanning size    |  |
| Print process    | Laser beam scanning and electro-photographic printing                            |
| Transmission     | 33,600 / 31,200 / 28,800 / 26,400 / 24,000 / 21,600 / 19,200 / 16,800 / 14,400 / |
| speed            | 12,000 / 9,600 / 7,200 / 4,800 / 2,400 bps (auto shift down system)              |

<sup>\*1</sup> For Super Fine transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

<sup>\*2</sup> JBIG transmission cannot be performed if the JBIG reception and ECM functions are not available on the destination fax. The ECM function is valid for communication over the G3 line.

# **Internet Fax Transmissions and Reception**

| Item                               | Specifications  |  |  |
|------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Network                            | <ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet. (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)</li> <li>Option: IEEE802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| Transmit function                  | E-mail  |  |  |
| Scan line density                  | <ul> <li>Standard: 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character), 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character)</li> <li>Optional: 200 × 400 dpi, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)*1*2</li> </ul> |  |  |
| Original size: Scanning            | 297 mm (A3 Landscape)*1, 257 mm (B4 JIS Landscape)*1, 210 mm  |  |  |
| width                              | (A4 Landscape)  |  |  |
| Communication Protocols            | <ul> <li>Transmission:</li> <li>SMTP, TCP/IP</li> <li>Reception:</li> <li>POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| E-mail format                      | Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion  |  |  |
|                                    | Attached file forms: TIFF-F (MH, MR*1, MMR*1 compression)   |  |  |
| Internet communication             | Send and receive e-mail with a computer that has an e-mail address  |  |  |
| Encryption method (for forwarding) | S/MIME  |  |  |
| Internet Fax send                  | Automatic conversion of sent documents to e-mail format and e-mail  |  |  |
| functions:                         | transmission. Memory transmission only.   |  |  |
| Internet Fax receive               | Automatic detection and printing of appended TIFF-F (MH) files and  |  |  |
| functions                          | ASCII text.   |  |  |
|                                    | Memory reception only.  |  |  |

<sup>\*1</sup> Full mode

<sup>\*2</sup> For superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

# **IP-FAX Specifications**

| Item                   | Specifications  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Network:               | Standard:   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)                                 |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | Option:   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | IEEE802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface                                  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scan line density:     | 8 x 3.85 lines/mm, 200x100dpi (standard character),                       |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | 8 x 7.7lines/mm, 200x200dpi (detail character),                           |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | 8 x 15.4lines/mm (fine character: optional expansion memory required),    |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | 16 x 15.4lines/mm, 400x400dpi (super fine character: optional expansion   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | memory required)  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Maximum Original size: | A3 or 11" x 17" (DLT)   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | Custom: 297mm x 1200mm (11.7" x 47.3")                                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| Maximum scanning       | 297mm x 1200mm (11.7" x 47.3")  |  |  |  |  |  |
| size:                  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Transmission protocol: | Recommended: T.38 Annex protocol, TCP, UDP/IP communication, SIP          |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | (RFC 3261 compliant), H.323 v2  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Compatible machines:   | IP-Fax compatible machines  |  |  |  |  |  |
| IP-Fax transmission    | Specify IP address and send faxes to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a   |  |  |  |  |  |
| function:              | network.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | Also capable of sending faxes from a G3 fax connected to a telephone line |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | via a VoIP gateway.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| IP-Fax reception       | Receive faxes sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network.       |  |  |  |  |  |
| function:              | Also capable of receiving faxes from a G3 fax connected to a telephone    |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | line via a VoIP gateway.  |  |  |  |  |  |

# Validated Peripherals

| Item          | Specifications |   |  |  |  |
|---------------|----------------|---|--|--|--|
| Gateway (T.38 | •              | InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305                                  |  |  |  |
| compliant)    |                | Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17)                       |  |  |  |
|               | •              | Cisco VoIP-Gateway (Operation confirmed with H.323)             |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: IOS12.3 (5)                                   |  |  |  |
|               |                | Platform: Cisco2600XM, 3725, 847-4V, 26xx, 36xx, 37xx, 7200,    |  |  |  |
|               |                | AS5300, ICS 7750  |  |  |  |
|               | •              | Siemens VoIP-Gateway RG8300 (Operation confirmed with SIP)      |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: Version 5                                     |  |  |  |
| Gatekeeper    | •              | InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305                                  |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17)                       |  |  |  |
|               | •              | Cisco Gatekeeper  |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: IOS12.1 (2) T                                 |  |  |  |
|               |                | Platform: Cisco2600XM, 3620, 3640, 3660, 3725, 3745, 7200, 7400 |  |  |  |
| SIP server    | •              | Cisco SIP proxy server  |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: Version 2.0                                   |  |  |  |
|               | •              | Cisco VoIP-Gateway  |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: IOS12.3 (17) a                                |  |  |  |
|               |                | Platform: Cisco3725 (256Mbyte RAM), Cisco2621XM (128Mbyte RAM)  |  |  |  |
|               | •              | Cisco unified CallManager                                       |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: Ver6.2  |  |  |  |
|               | •              | InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305                                  |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17)                       |  |  |  |
|               | •              | Siemens HiPath8000 (Operation confirmed with SIP)               |  |  |  |
|               |                | Software version: Voice redundant v4                            |  |  |  |

# E-mail Transmission and Folder Transmission (Fax (Classic) only)

| Item                                   | Specifications  |
|--|---|
| Network                                | <ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)</li> <li>Option: IEEE802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface</li> </ul>   |
| Scan line density                      | <ul> <li>Standard: 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character)*1, 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character)</li> <li>Optional: 200 × 400 dpi, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)*2</li> </ul> |
| Maximum original size                  | Standard: A3 Landscape or 11 × 17 Landscape  Custom (w × h): 297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)  |
| Maximum scanning size (w × h)          | 297 × 1,200 mm (11.7 × 47.3 inches)   |
| E-mail transmission protocols          | SMTP, TCP/IP  |
| Protocols for sending files to folders | SMB, FTP, TCP/IP  |
| E-mail format                          | Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion  |
| File formats                           | TIFF (MH, MR, MMR compression), PDF, PDF/A When you select PDF or PDF/A for the file format, you can attach a digital signature.  |
| Authentication methods                 | SMTP-AUTH, POP before SMTP, A-POP   |
| Encryption method                      | S/MIME  |
| E-mail sending functions               | Automatically converts documents to e-mail format and sends them as e-mail.   |
| Sending to folder functions            | Sends scanned files over the network to shared folders or FTP server folders.   |
|  |   |

<sup>\*1</sup> When you send documents in TIFF format.

<sup>\*2</sup> For detail-character and superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

# **E-mail Reception**

| Item                         | Specifications                            |  |  |  |
|------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Network                      | Standard:                                 |  |  |  |
|                              | Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) |  |  |  |
|                              | Option:                                   |  |  |  |
|                              | IEEE802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface  |  |  |  |
| E-mail reception protocols   | POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP                 |  |  |  |
| (Mail to Print)              |   |  |  |  |
| Encryption method            | Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion        |  |  |  |
| File formats (Mail to Print) | JPEG (JFIF), PDF                          |  |  |  |
| Authentication methods       | SMTP-AUTH, POP before SMTP, A-POP         |  |  |  |
| Encryption method            | S/MIME                                    |  |  |  |

# **List of Maximum Values for Each Setting Item**

See the table below for the maximum value or maximum number of items that can be registered for each item.

| ltem   | Standard                       |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Amount of memory   | 4 MB                           |
|  | About 60 MB when the optional  |
|  | expansion memory is attached   |
| Number of documents that can be stored in memory when using      | 800                            |
| Memory Transmission  |                                |
| Number of received documents that can be stored on the hard      | 800                            |
| disk drive   |                                |
| Number of pages of documents that can be stored in the           | About 320                      |
| memory (ITU-T No.1 chart, resolution "Standard", standard        | About 4,800 pages when the     |
| document comprising texts)                                       | optional expansion memory is   |
|  | attached                       |
| Number of destinations that can be registered in the address     | 2000                           |
| book   |                                |
| Number of groups that can be registered                          | 100                            |
| Number of destinations registered in a group                     | 500                            |
| Number of destinations that can be specified for a document      | 500                            |
| when distributing by Broadcast Transmission                      |                                |
| Number of destinations that can be specified for any document    | 2000                           |
| Number of destinations that can be specified as the Forwarding   | 498                            |
| destination or the receiving station of a Transfer Box.          |                                |
| Number of search results that can be displayed at one time       | 100                            |
| Number of destinations that can be held in the destination       | 10                             |
| history  |                                |
| Number of characters/digits in a destination that can be entered | 128 characters                 |
| manually   |                                |
| Number of F code boxes that can be registered                    | 150                            |
| Maximum number of characters that can be entered in the          | 64 double-byte characters (128 |
| subject of an outgoing e-mail                                    | single-byte characters)        |
| Number of records that can be viewed on the machine              | 1000                           |
| Number of communication results that are shown in Records        | 50                             |
| Maximum number of characters in the name of a Special            | 24 characters                  |
| Sender that can be registered                                    |                                |
| Maximum number of Special Senders that can be registered         | 250                            |
| Maximum number of results that can be viewed in Web Image        | 70                             |

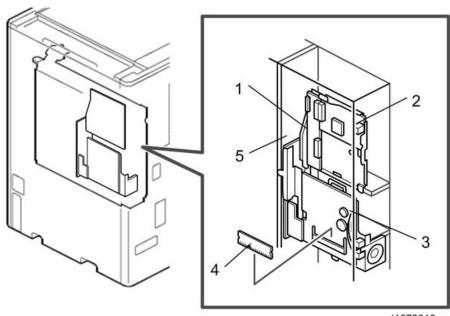
### 6.Specifications

| Item   | Standard                      |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Monitor for transmission performed from the LAN-Fax driver     |                               |
| Maximum number of transmission files sent from the LANFax      | 800                           |
| driver that can be stored as Transmission Standby Files on the |                               |
| machine  |                               |
| Maximum number of destinations registered in a group           | 500                           |
| Maximum number of programs that can be registered              | 100                           |
| Maximum number of characters that can be used as the name      | 10 double-byte characters (20 |
|  | singlebyte characters)        |
| Maximum number of documents that can be printed at one time    | 30                            |
| in [Check Stored Reception File]                               |                               |
| Maximum number of documents that can be deleted at one time    | 30                            |
| in [Check Stored Reception File]                               |                               |
| Maximum number of destinations that can be registered in       | 2000                          |
| Destination List of LAN-Fax                                    |                               |
| Maximum number of destinations that can be specified at one    | 500                           |
| time in the LAN-Fax driver                                     |                               |

You may not store or send up to the maximum number depending on the document or original type.

# **Fax Unit Configuration**

# G3 Interface Unit Type M37



d1673010

| Component        | Code | No. | Remarks                        |
|------------------|------|-----|--------------------------------|
| FCU              | D3GF | 1   | Included with the fax unit     |
| GWFCU I/F        |      | 5   |                                |
| Expansion Memory | D3BZ | 2   | Optional                       |
| SG3 Board        | D3BV | 3   | Included with optional G3 unit |
| CCU I/F Board    |      | 4   |                                |